THE TRANSCEIVER

IC-7800

Instruction Manual

FOREWORD

Congratulations! You are the owner of the world's most advanced amateur HF/50 MHz transceiver— IC-7800. The IC-7800 is designed and built with Icom's superior technology and craftsmanship. With proper care, this product should provide you with years of trouble-free operation.

We would like to take a couple of moments of your time to thank you for making your IC-7800 your radio of choice, and hope you agree with Icom's philosophy of "technology first." Many hours of research and development went into the design of your IC-7800.

◇ *FEATURES*

❍ *Ultimate receiver performance +40 dBm of IP3 characteristics (HF bands only)*

❍ *Built-in Baudot RTTY and PSK31 modulator/demodulator and direct PC keyboard connection capability for RTTY and PSK31 operation without a PC*

❍ *Independent receiver circuits for main and sub bands provide perfect Dualwatch operation*

❍ *Up-graded real-time spectrum scope— center frequency and fix frequency modes, and mini-scope indications*

IMPORTANT

READ THIS INSTRUCTION MANUAL CAREFULLY before attempting to operate the transceiver.

SAVE THIS INSTRUCTION MANUAL. This manual contains important safety and operating instructions for the IC-7800.

EXPLICIT DEFINITIONS

WORD	DEFINITION
⚠ WARNING	Personal injury, fire hazard or electric shock may occur.
CAUTION	Equipment damage may occur.
NOTE	If disregarded, inconvenience only. No risk or personal injury, fire or electric shock.

TRADEMARKS

Icom, Icom Inc. and the Ícom are registered trademarks of Icom Incorporated (Japan) in the United States, the United Kingdom, Germany, France, Spain, Russia and/or other countries.

PRECAUTIONS

⚠ **WARNING HIGH VOLTAGE! NEVER** attach an antenna or internal antenna connector during transmission. This may result in an electrical shock or burn.

⚠**WARNING! NEVER** operate the transceiver with a headset or other audio accessories at high volume levels. Hearing experts advise against continuous high volume operation. If you experience a ringing in your ears, reduce the volume or discontinue use.

⚠ **CAUTION! NEVER** change the internal settings of the transceiver. This result in reduced transceiver performance and/or damage to the transceiver.

⚠ **CAUTION! NEVER** touch the transceiver top cover when transmitting continuously for long periods. It will become hot.

In particular, incorrect settings for transmitter circuits, such as output power, idling current, etc., might damage the expensive final devices.

The transceiver warranty does not cover any problems caused by unauthorized internal adjustment.

⚠ **CAUTION!** The transceiver weighs approx. 25 kg (55 lb). 2 peoples should be present to carry, lift up or turn over the transceiver, etc.

⚠ **CAUTION!** The socket-outlet must be near the transceiver and must be easily accessible.

⚠ **ACHTUNG!** Die Steckdose muß nabe bei diesem Gerät angebracht und zugänglich sein.

⚠ **NEVER** let metal, wire or other objects touch any internal part or connectors on the rear panel of the transceiver. This may result in an electric shock.

⚠ **NEVER** let objects impede the operation of the cooling fan on the rear panel.

⚠ **NEVER** expose the transceiver to rain, snow or any liquids.

⚠ **NEVER** installing the transceiver in a place without adequate ventilation. Heat dissipation may be affected, and the transceiver may be damaged.

⚠ **NEVER** operate or touch the transceiver with wet hands. This may result in an electric shock or damage the transceiver.

DO NOT the use of chemical agents such as benzine or alcohol when cleaning, as they can damage the transceiver's surfaces.

DO NOT push the PTT when not actually desiring to transmit.

AVOID using or placing the transceiver in areas with temperatures below ±0°C (+32°F) or above +50°C (+122°F).

AVOID placing the transceiver in excessively dusty environments or in direct sunlight.

AVOID placing the transceiver against walls or putting anything on top of the transceiver. This will obstruct heat dissipation.

Place unit in a secure place to avoid inadvertent use by children.

BE CAREFUL! The top panel will become hot when operating the transceiver continuously for long periods.

BE CAREFUL! If a linear amplifier is connected, set the transceiver's RF output power to less than the linear amplifier's maximum input level, otherwise, the linear amplifier will be damaged.

Use Icom microphones only (supplied or optional). Other manufacturer's microphones have different pin assignments, and connection to the IC-7800 may damage the transceiver.

The LCD display may have cosmetic imperfections that appear as small or dark spots. This is not a malfunction or defect, but a normal characteristic of LCD displays.

During maritime mobile operation, keep the transceiver and microphone as far away as possible from the magnetic navigation compass to prevent erroneous indications.

Turn [I/O] switch (on the rear panel) OFF and/or disconnect the AC power cable from the AC outlet when you will not use the transceiver for long period of time.

For U.S.A. only
CAUTION: Changes or modifications to this device, not expressly approved by Icom Inc., could void your authority to operate this device under FCC regulations.

SUPPLIED ACCESSORIES
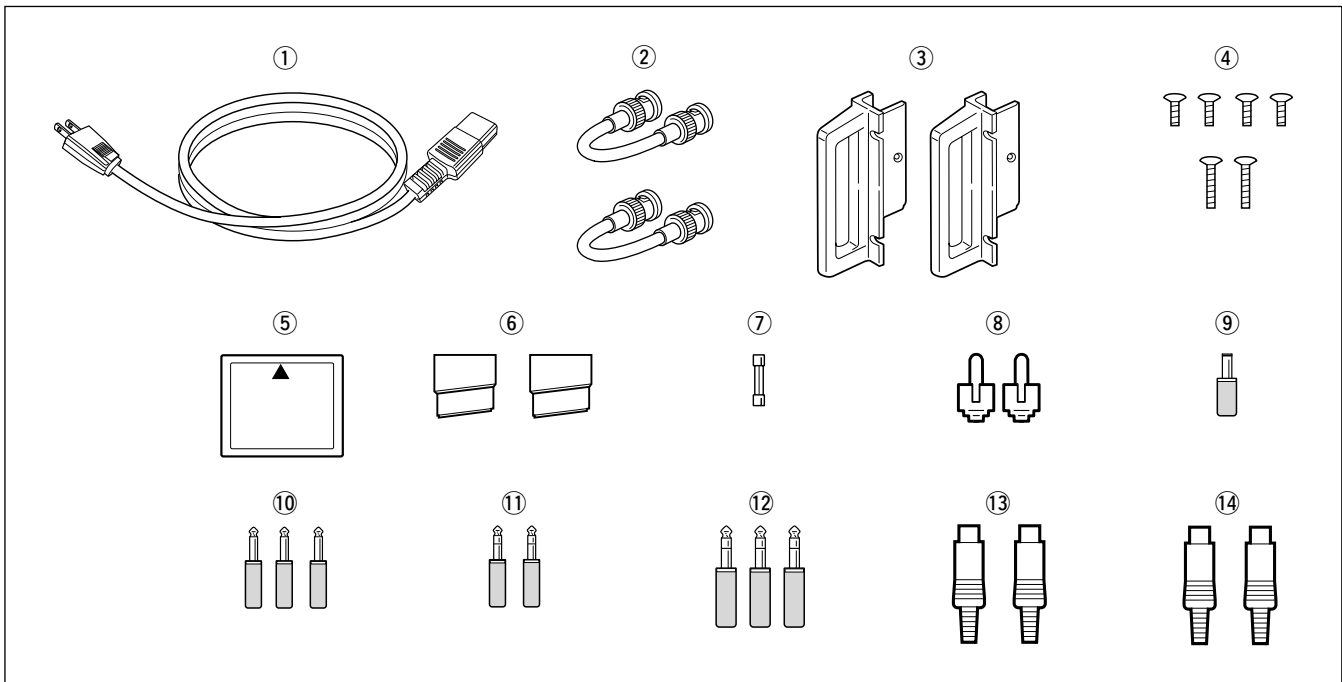
① AC power cable* 1
② Antenna jumper cables 2
③ Rack mounting handles .... 1 pair
④ Screws for rack mounting handles .... 1 set
⑤ CF (Compact Flash) memory card 1
⑥ Stands .... 1 pair
⑦ Spare fuse (FGB 2 A) 1
⑧ RCA plugs 2

⑨ DC power plug 1
⑩ 2-conductor ⅛″ plugs 3
⑪ 3-conductor ⅛″ plugs 2
⑫ 3-conductor ¼″ plugs 3
⑬ ACC plugs (7-pin) 2
⑭ ACC plugs (8-pin) 2

*May differ from that shown according to version

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PANEL DESCRIPTION   Section 1

■ Front panel
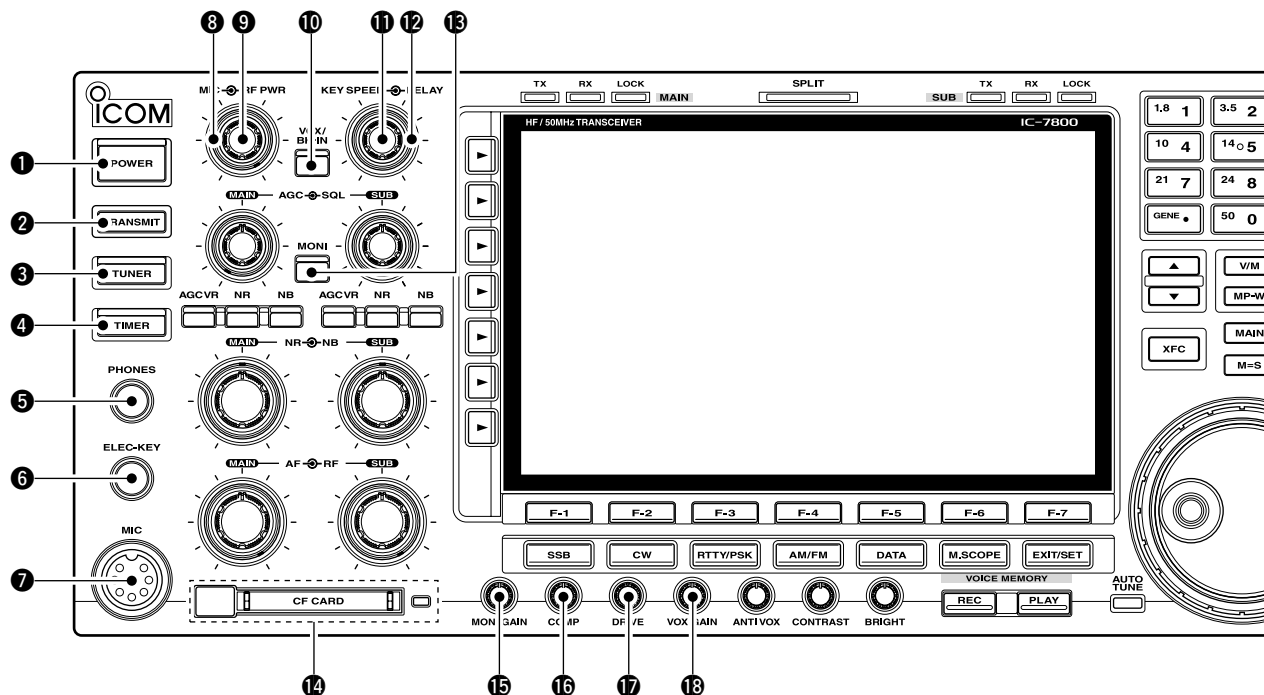
❶ POWER SWITCH [POWER] (p. 3-2)

Turn the internal power supply ON in advance. The internal power supply switch is located on the rear panel. (p. 3-2)

➡ Push to turn the transceiver power ON.
  • The [POWER] indicator above this switch lights green when powered ON.
➡ Push for 1 sec. to turn the transceiver power OFF.
  • The [POWER] indicator lights orange even the transceiver is powered OFF when the internal power supply is switched ON.

❷ TRANSMIT SWITCH [TRANSMIT]

Selects transmitting or receiving.
• The [TX] indicator lights red while transmitting and the [RX] indicator lights green when the squelch is open.

❸ ANTENNA TUNER SWITCH [TUNER] (p. 10-5)

➡ Turn the internal antenna tuner ON and OFF (bypass) when pushed momentarily.
  • The [TUNER] indicator above this switch lights green when the tuner is turned ON, goes off when turned OFF (bypassed).
➡ Tunes the antenna manually when pushed for 1 sec.
  • The [TUNER] indicator blinks red during manual tuning.
  • When the tuner cannot tune the antenna, the tuning circuit is bypassed automatically after 20 sec.

❹ TIMER SWITCH [TIMER] (p. 11-4)

➡ Turns the sleep or daily timer function ON and OFF when pushed.
  • The [TIMER] indicator above this switch lights green when the timer is in use.
➡ Enters timer set mode when pushed for 1 sec.

❺ HEADPHONE JACK [PHONES]

Accepts headphones.
• Output power: 50 mW with an 8 Ω load.
• When headphones are connected, the internal speaker or connected external speaker does not function.

❻ ELECTRONIC KEYER JACK [ELEC-KEY] (p. 2-4)

Accepts a paddle to activate the internal electronic keyer for CW operation.
• Selection between the internal electronic keyer, bug-key and straight key operation can be made in keyer set mode. (p. 4-12)
• A straight key jack is separately available on the rear panel. See [KEY] on p. 1-13.
• Keyer polarity (dot and dash) can be reversed in keyer set mode. (p. 4-12)
• 4-channel memory keyer is available for your convenience. (p. 4-8)
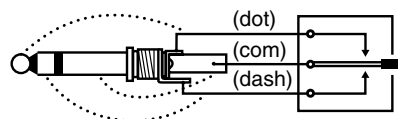
❼ MICROPHONE CONNECTOR [MIC]

Accepts an optional microphone.
• See p. 15-4 for appropriate microphones.
• See p. 2-9 for microphone connector information.

⑧ MIC GAIN CONTROL [MIC]
Adjusts microphone input gain.
• The transmit audio tone in SSB, AM and FM modes can be adjusted independently in set mode. (p. 12-4)

✔ *How to set the microphone gain.*
Set the [MIC] control so that the ALC meter sometimes swings during normal voice transmission in SSB, AM or FM mode.

Recommended level for an Icom microphone
Decreases   Increases
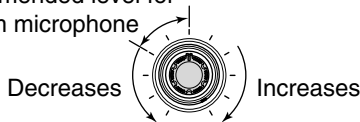
⑨ RF POWER CONTROL [RF PWR] (p. 3-12)
Continuously varies the RF output power from minimum (5 W*) to maximum (200 W*).
*AM mode: 5 W to 50 W

Increases
Decreases
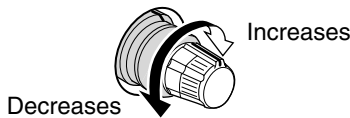
⑩ VOX/BREAK-IN SWITCH [VOX/BK-IN]
➡ Push to turn the VOX function ON and OFF during SSB, AM and FM mode operation. (p. 6-2)
➡ Push to turn the break-in function ON (semi-break-in, full break-in) and OFF during CW mode operation. (p. 6-3)
➡ Push for 1 sec. to enter VOX set mode. (p. 6-2)

✔ *What is the VOX function?*
The VOX function (voice operated transmission) starts transmission without pushing the transmit switch or PTT switch when you speak into the microphone; then, automatically returns to receive when you stop speaking.

✔ *What is the break-in function?*
The break-in function switches transmit and receive with CW keying. Full break-in (QSK) can monitor the receive signal during keying.

⑪ ELECTRONIC CW KEYER SPEED CONTROL [KEY SPEED] (p. 4-4)
Adjusts the internal electronic CW keyer's speed.
• 6 wpm (min.) to 60 wpm (max.) can be set.

Max. 60 wpm
Min. 6 wpm
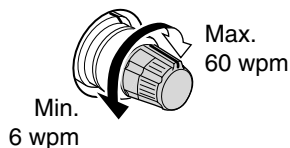
⑫ BREAK-IN DELAY CONTROL [DELAY] (p. 6-3)
Adjusts the transmit-to-receive switching delay time for CW semi break-in operations.

Long delay for slow speed keying
Short delay for high speed keying
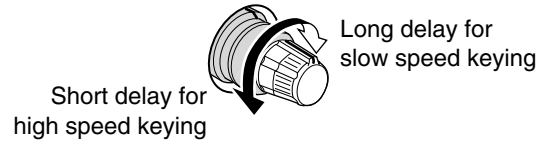
⑬ MONITOR SWITCH [MONI] (p. 6-4)
Monitors your transmitted IF signal.
• The CW sidetone functions regardless of [MONI] switch setting in CW mode.
• The [MONI] indicator above this switch lights green while the function is activated.

⑭ MEMORY CARD SLOT [CF CARD] (p. 2-3)
Insert the supplied CF (Compact Flash) memory card for both reading/storing a variety of transceiver's information or data.
• The indicator beside the slot lights or blinks when the transceiver accessing to the memory card for reading or writing data.
• Push-in the eject button to remove the memory card.

⑮ MONITOR GAIN CONTROL [MONI GAIN] (p. 6-4)
Adjusts the transmit IF signal monitor level.

Push
Monitor gain increases
Monitor gain decreases
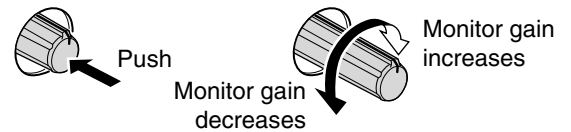
⑯ COMPRESSION LEVEL CONTROL [COMP] (p. 6-5)
Adjusts the speech compression level in SSB.

Push
Monitor gain increases
Monitor gain decreases
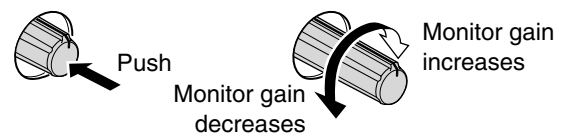
⑰ DRIVE GAIN CONTROL [DRIVE] (p. 3-13)
Adjusts the amplifying gain level at the drive stage. Activated in all modes (except SSB with [COMP] OFF).

Push
Increases
Decreases
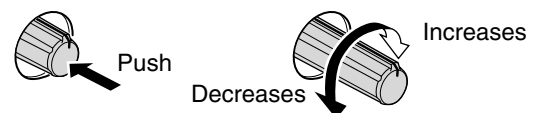
⑱ VOX GAIN CONTROL [VOX GAIN] (p. 6-2)
Adjusts the transmit/receive switching threshold level for VOX operation.

Push
High sensitivity
Low sensitivity
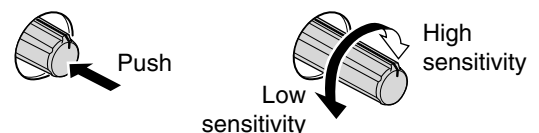
■ Front panel (continued)
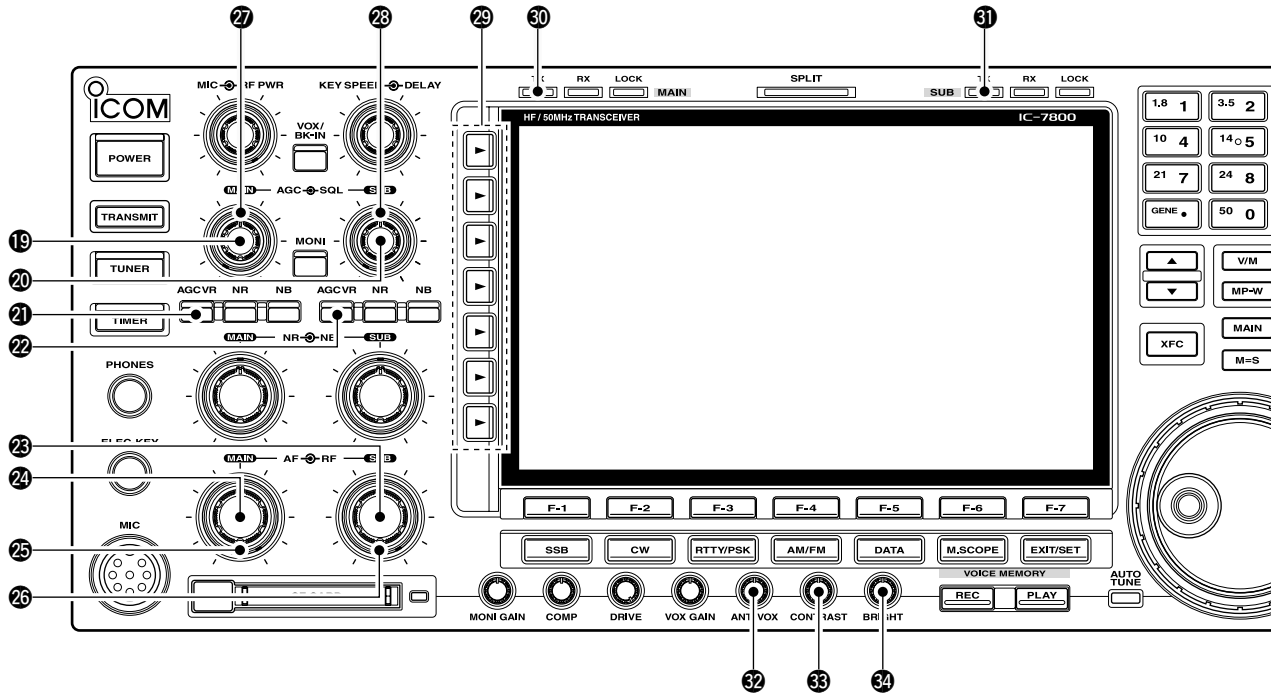
⑲ **AGC CONTROL [AGC]** (for MAIN band; p. 5-11)
⑳ **AGC CONTROL [AGC]** (for SUB band; p. 5-11)
Adjusts the AGC circuit time constant.
- To use the set value, push appropriate band's [AGC VR] ([AGC VR] indicator lights).

Slow
Fast

㉑ **AGC VOLUME SWITCH [AGC VR]**
(for MAIN band; p. 5-11)
㉒ **AGC VOLUME SWITCH [AGC VR]**
(for SUB band; p. 5-11)
➥ Push to toggle [AGC] control usage ON and OFF.
- The set level with [AGC] control is used for the operation when switched ON.
- The [AGC VR] indicator above this switch lights green when the control setting is in use.
➥ Turns the AGC function OFF when pushed for 1 sec.

㉓ **AF CONTROL [AF]** (inner control; for SUB band)
㉔ **AF CONTROL [AF]** (inner control; for MAIN band)
Varies the audio output level from the speaker.
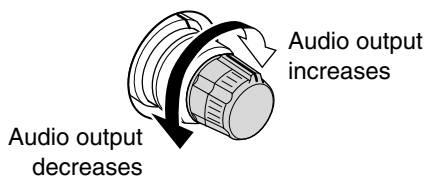
Audio output increases
Audio output decreases

㉕ **RF GAIN CONTROL [RF]** (outer control; for MAIN band; p. 3-9)
㉖ **RF GAIN CONTROL [RF]** (outer control; for SUB band; p. 3-9)
Adjusts the RF gain level.
▨ While rotating the RF gain control, noise may be heard. This comes from the DSP unit and does not indicate an equipment malfunction.

Sensitivity increases
Sensitivity decreases
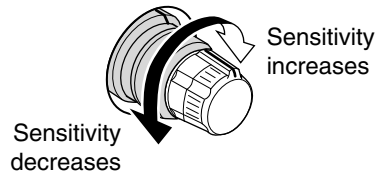
㉗ **SQUELCH CONTROL [SQL]** (outer control; for MAIN band; p. 3-9)
㉘ **SQUELCH CONTROL [SQL]** (outer control; for SUB band; p. 3-9)
Adjusts the squelch threshold level. The squelch removes noise output from the speaker (closed condition) when no signal is received.
- The squelch is particularly effective for FM. It is also available for other modes.
- 11 to 12 o'clock position is recommended for any setting of the [SQL] control.

Deep
Shallow
Noise squelch
Squelch threshold
Squelch is open.
S-meter squelch
Shallow
Deep
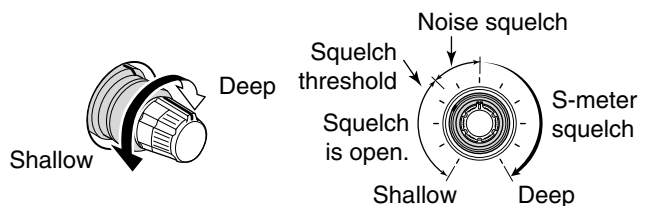
㉙ MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCHES

Push to select the functions indicated in the LCD display to the right of these switches.
• Functions vary depending on the operating condition.
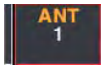
ANT 1
➡ Selects the antenna connector from ANT1, ANT2, ANT3 and ANT4 when pushed. (p. 10-2)
➡ Displays antenna selection memory when pushed for 1 sec.
   • When the receive antenna is activated, the antenna which is connected to the [ANT4] is used for receive only.

⁄⁄ When a transverter is in use, this [ANT] does not function and 'XVERT' appears.
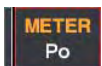
METER Po
➡ Selects RF power (Po), SWR, ALC, COMP, Vᴅ or Iᴅ metering during transmit. (p. 3-10)
➡ Switches the multi-function digital meter ON and OFF when pushed for 1 sec. (p. 3-10)
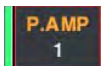
P.AMP 1
➡ Selects one of 2 receive RF preamps or bypasses them. (p. 5-9)
   • "P. AMP1" activates 10 dB preamp.
   • "P. AMP2" activates 16 dB high-gain preamp.

✔ *What is the preamp?*
The preamp amplifies received signals in the front end circuit to improve the S/N ratio and sensitivity. Select "P. AMP1" or "P. AMP2" when receiving weak signals.

ATT OFF
➡ Selects 6 dB, 12 dB or 18 dB attenuator when pushed. (p. 5-9)
➡ Selects 3 dB, 6 dB, 9 dB, 12 dB, 18 dB, or 21 dB attenuator when pushed for 1 sec. (p. 5-9)

✔ *What is the attenuator?*
The attenuator prevents a desired signal from distorting when very strong signals are near the desired frequency, or when very strong electric fields, such as from a broadcasting station, are near your location.
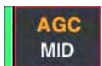
AGC MID
➡ Activates or selects fast, middle or slow AGC time constant when pushed. (p. 5-11)
   • "FAST" is only available for FM mode.
➡ Enters the AGC set mode when pushed for 1 sec. (p. 5-11)

⁄⁄ AGC time constant can be set between 0.1 to 8.0 sec. (depends on mode), or turned OFF. While "OFF" is selected, the S-meter does not function.

✔ *What is the AGC?*
The AGC controls receiver gain to produce a constant audio output level, even when the received signal strength is varied by fading, etc. Select "FAST" for tuning and select "MID" or "SLOW" depending on the receiving condition.

COMP OFF WIDE
➡ Turns the speech compressor ON and OFF in SSB mode. (p. 6-5)
➡ Switches the narrow, middle or wide transmit filter when pushed for 1 sec.

✔ *What is the speech compressor?*
The speech compressor compresses the transmitter audio input to increase the average audio output level. Therefore, talk power is increased. This function is effective for long distance communication or when propagation conditions are poor.

1/4 ON
➡ Turns the ¼ function ON and OFF in SSB data, CW, RTTY and PSK modes. (p. 3-6)
   • ¼ function sets dial rotation to ¼ of normal for fine tuning.

TONE OFF
➡ Switches the tone encoder, tone squelch function and no tone operation when pushed in FM mode. (pgs. 4-32, 4-33)
➡ Enters the tone set mode when pushed for 1 sec. in FM mode. (pgs. 4-32, 4-33)

VSC OFF
➡ Switches the voice squelch control function ON and OFF. (p. 9-3)

㉚ TRANSMIT INDICATOR [TX] (for MAIN band)
㉛ TRANSMIT INDICATOR [TX] (for SUB band)
Lights red while transmitting.
• SUB band's [TX] indicator lights only when the split operation.

㉜ ANTI VOX CONTROL [ANTI VOX] (p. 6-2)
Adjusts the VOX deactivate level to prevent unwanted VOX control from the speaker audio.

Push / Decreases cut-off level / Increases cut-off level
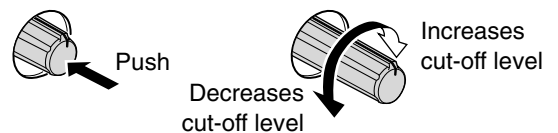
㉝ LCD CONTRAST CONTROL [CONTRAST]
Adjusts the LCD contrast.

Push / Low contrast / High contrast
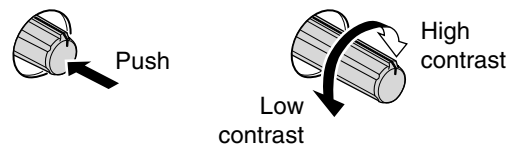
㉞ LCD BRIGHTNESS CONTROL [BRIGHT]
Adjusts the LCD brightness.

Push / Dark / Bright

■ Front panel (continued)
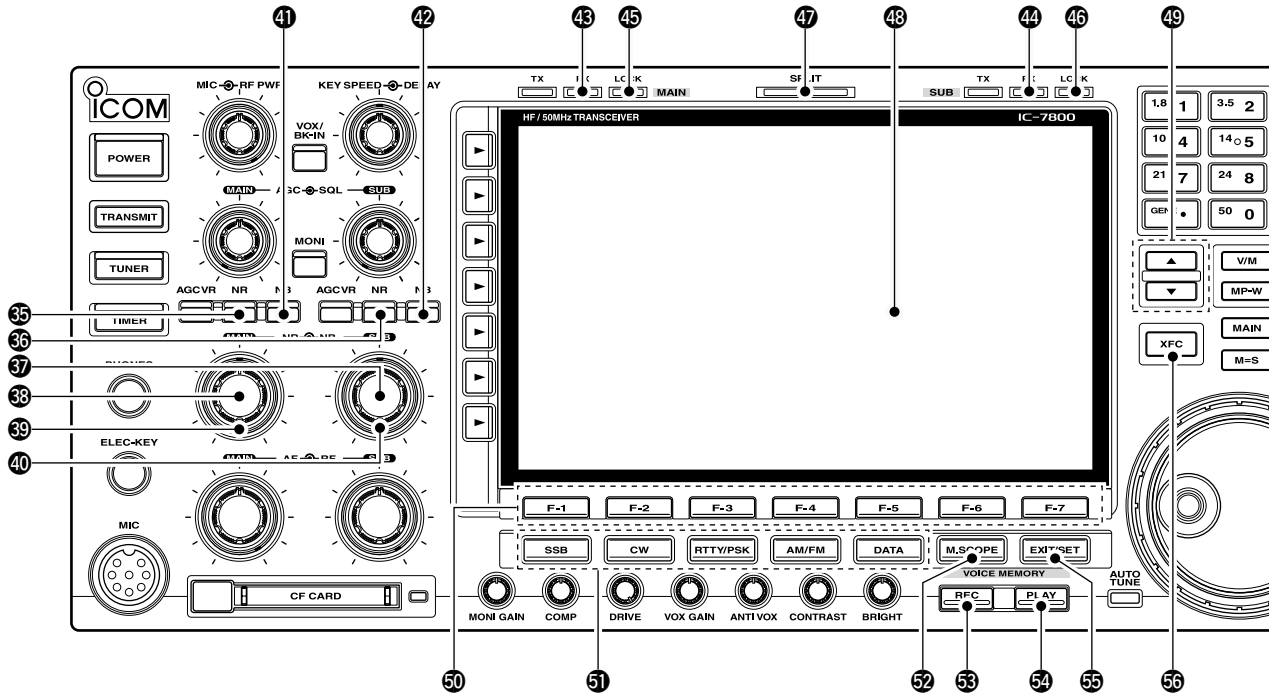
⨺ **NOISE REDUCTION SWITCH [NR]** (for MAIN band; p. 5-18)

⨻ **NOISE REDUCTION SWITCH [NR]** (for SUB band; p. 5-18)

Push to switches the noise reduction ON and OFF.
• The [NR] indicator above this switch lights green when the function is activated.

㊲ **NOISE REDUCTION LEVEL CONTROL [NR]** (inner control; for SUB band; p. 5-18)

㊳ **NOISE REDUCTION LEVEL CONTROL [NR]** (inner control; for MAIN band; p. 5-18)

Adjusts the noise reduction level when the noise reduction is in use. Set for maximum readability.
• To activate this control, push the appropriate band's [NR] in advance.

Increases

Decreases
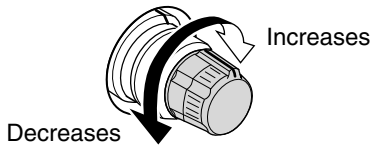
㊴ **NOISE BLANKER CONTROL [NB]** (outer control; for MAIN band; p. 5-17)

㊵ **NOISE BLANKER CONTROL [NB]** (outer control; for SUB band; p. 5-17)

Adjust the noise blanker threshold level.
• To activate this control, push appropriate band's [NB] switch in advance.

Deep

Shallow
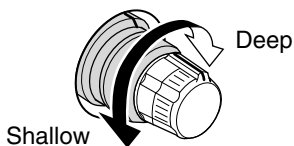
㊶ **NOISE BLANKER SWITCH [NB]** (for MAIN band; p. 5-17)

㊷ **NOISE BLANKER SWITCH [NB]** (for SUB band; p. 5-17)

➥ Switches the noise blanker ON and OFF when pushed. The noise blanker reduces pulse-type noise such as that generated by automobile ignition systems. This function cannot be used for FM, or non-pulse-type noise.
• The [NB] indicator above this switch lights green while the function is activated.
➥ Enters blank-width set mode when pushed for 1 sec.

㊸ **RECEIVE INDICATOR [RX]** (for MAIN band)
㊹ **RECEIVE INDICATOR [RX]** (for SUB band)
Lights green while receiving a signal and when the squelch is open.

㊺ **LOCK INDICATOR [LOCK]** (for MAIN band; p. 5-18)
㊻ **LOCK INDICATOR [LOCK]** (for SUB band; p. 5-18)
Lights when the dial lock function is activated.

㊼ **SPLIT OPERATION INDICATOR [SPLIT]**
Lights during split frequency operation.

㊽ **LCD FUNCTION DISPLAY** (p. 1-14)
Shows the operating frequency, function switch menus, spectrum scope screen, memory channel screen, set mode settings, etc.

⓭ MEMORY UP/DOWN SWITCHES [▲]/[▼] (p. 8-2)
Push to select the memory channel number for the
selected readout.
• Memory channels can be selected both in VFO and
memory modes.

⓮ LCD FUNCTION SWITCHES [F-1]–[F-7]
Push to select the function indicated in the LCD dis-
play above these switches.
• Functions vary depending on the operating condition.

⓯ MODE SWITCHES
Selects the desired mode. (p. 3-8)
• Announces the selected mode. (p. 12-16)
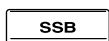
| SSB | ➥ Selects USB and LSB modes alternately. |

| CW | ➥ Selects CW and CW-R (CW reverse) modes alternately. |

| RTTY/PSK | ➥ Switches RTTY and PSK mode when pushed. |
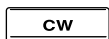
➥ Switches RTTY and RTTY-R (RTTY re-
verse) mode when pushed for 1 sec. in
RTTY mode.
➥ Switches PSK and PSK-R (PSK reverse)
mode when pushed for 1 sec. in PSK
mode.

| AM/FM | ➥ Selects AM and FM modes alternately. |

| DATA | ➥ Selects SSB, AM or FM data mode (USB-D, LSB-D, AM-D, FM-D) when pushed in SSB, AM or FM mode, respectively. |

➥ Switches D1, D2 and D3 when pushed
for 1 sec.

⓰ MINI SPECTRUM SCOPE SWITCH [M.SCOPE]
(p. 5-4)
Turns the mini spectrum scope screen indication
ON and OFF.
• The mini spectrum scope screen can be indicated with
another screen, such as memory, set mode screen, si-
multaneously.

⓱ VOICE MEMORY RECORD SWITCH [REC]
(p. 7-3)
➥ Records the receiving signal contents for the pre-
set time period when pushed.
 • After the preset time has passed, stops recording au-
tomatically.
➥ Records the receiving signal contents until can-
celling the record when pushed for 1 sec.
 • Push this switch momentarily to stops recording.
 • The memory records the latest 30 sec. audio only.

⓲ VOICE MEMORY PLAY BACK SWITCH [PLAY]
(p. 7-4)
➥ Play back the previously recorded audio for the
preset time period when pushed.
➥ Play back all of the previously recorded audio
when pushed for 1 sec.

⓳ EXIT/SET SWITCH [EXIT/SET]
➥ Push to exits or returns to the previous screen in-
dication during spectrum scope, memory, scan or
set mode screen indication, etc.
➥ Displays set mode menu screen when pushed
for 1 sec.

⓴ TRANSMIT FREQUENCY CHECK SWITCH [XFC]
(p. 6-6)
Monitors the transmit frequency (including ⊿TX fre-
quency setting) when pushed and held during the
split frequency operation.
• While pushing this switch, the transmit frequency can be
changed with the main dial, keypad, memo pad or
[▲]/[▼] switches.
• When the split lock function is turned ON, pushing [XFC]
cancels the dial lock function. (p. 6-7)

■ Front panel (continued)
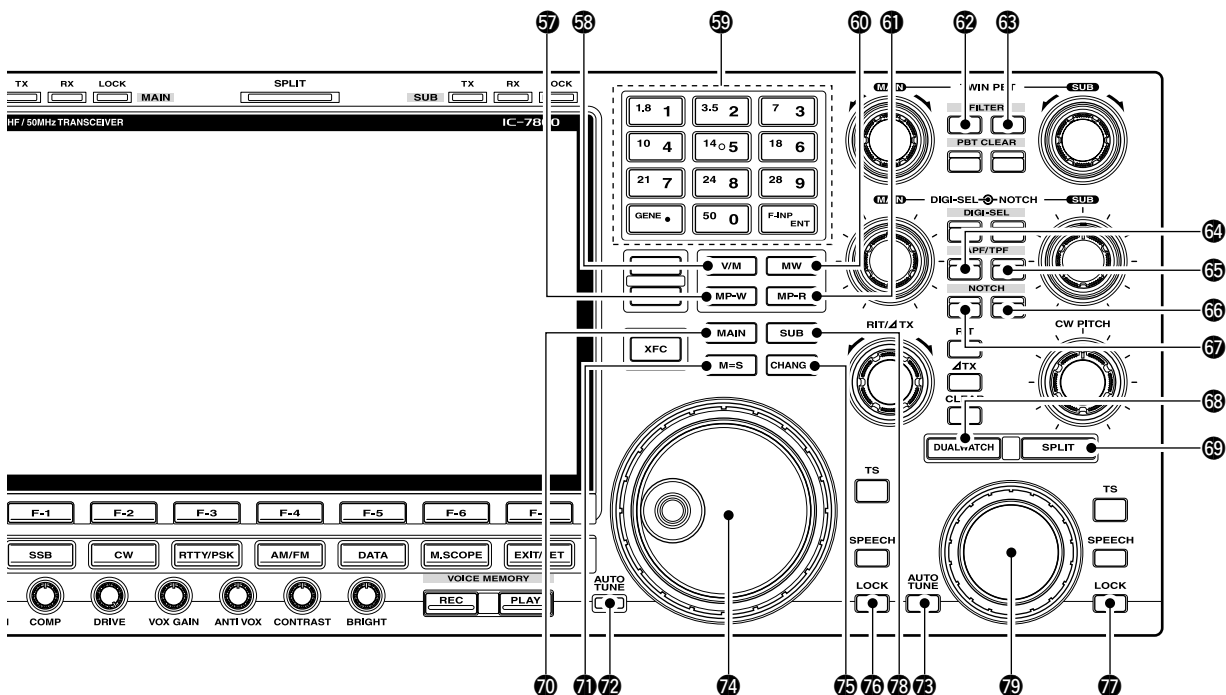
⑤ MEMO PAD-WRITE SWITCH [MP-W] (p. 8-7)
Programs the selected readout frequency and operating mode into a memo pad.
• The 5 most recent entries remain in memo pads.
• The memo pad capacity can be expanded from 5 to 10 in set mode for your convenience. (p. 12-16)

⑤ VFO/MEMORY SWITCH [V/M]
➡ Switches the selected readout operating mode between the VFO mode and memory mode when pushed. (pgs. 3-3, 8-2)
➡ Transfers the memory contents to VFO when pushed for 1 sec. (p. 5-5)

⑤ KEYPAD
➡ Pushing a key selects the operating band.
• [GENE•] selects the general coverage band.
➡ Pushing the same key 2 or 3 times calls up other stacked frequencies in the band. (p. 3-4)
• Icom's triple band stacking register memorizes 3 frequencies in each band.
➡ After pushing [F-INP•ENT], enters a keyed frequency or memory channel. Pushing [F-INP•ENT] or [▲/▼] is necessary at the end. (pgs. 3-5, 8-2)
• e.g. to enter 14.195 MHz, push [F-INP] [1.8•1] [10•4] [GENE •] [1.8•1] [28•9] [14•5] [F-INP•ENT].

⑥ MEMORY WRITE SWITCH [MW] (p. 8-4)
Stores the selected readout frequency and operating mode into the displayed memory channel when pushed for 1 sec.
• This function is available both in VFO and memory modes.

⑥ MEMO PAD-READ SWITCH [MP-R] (p. 8-7)
Each push calls up a frequency and operating mode in a memo pad. The 5 (or 10) most recently programmed frequencies and operating modes can be recalled, starting from the most recent.
• The memo pad capacity can be expanded from 5 to 10 in set mode for your convenience. (p. 12-16)

⑥ FILTER SWITCH [FILTER] (for MAIN band; p. 5-13)
⑥ FILTER SWITCH [FILTER] (for SUB band; p. 5-13)
➡ Selects one of 3 IF filter settings.
➡ Enters the filter set screen when pushed for 1 sec.

⑥ AUDIO PEAK FILTER/TWIN PEAK FILTER SWITCH [APF/TPF] (for MAIN band)
⑥ AUDIO PEAK FILTER/TWIN PEAK FILTER SWITCH [APF/TPF] (for SUB band)
➡ Push to turn the audio peak filter ON and OFF during CW mode operation. (p. 4-6)
➡ Push to turn the twin peak filter ON and OFF during RTTY mode operation. (p. 4-14)
• "APF" appears when audio peak filter is in use.
• "TPF" appears when twin peak filter is in use.
➡ During CW mode operation, push for 1 sec. to select the APF passband width from 80, 160 and 320 Hz. (p. 4-6)

66 NOTCH SWITCH [NOTCH] (for SUB band; p. 5-19)
67 NOTCH SWITCH [NOTCH] (for MAIN band; p. 5-19)
➥ Switches the notch function between auto, manual and OFF in SSB and AM modes.
➥ Turns the manual notch function ON and OFF when pushed in CW, RTTY and PSK31 mode.
➥ Turns the auto notch function ON and OFF when pushed in FM mode.
• "AN" appears when auto notch is in use.
• "MN" appears when manual notch is in use.
➥ Switches the manual notch characteristics from wide, middle and narrow when pushed for 1 sec.

✔ *What is the notch function?*
The notch function eliminates unwanted CW or AM carrier tones while preserving the desired signal's audio response. The filtering frequency is adjusted to effectively eliminate unwanted tones via the DSP circuit.

68 DUALWATCH SWITCH [DUALWATCH] (p. 5-16)
➥ Turns the dualwatch function ON and OFF when pushed.
➥ Turns the dualwatch function ON and equalizes the main/sub readout frequency to the sub/main readout when pushed for 1 sec. (Quick dualwatch function)
• The quick dualwatch function can be turned OFF using set mode. (p. 12-13)

69 SPLIT SWITCH [SPLIT] (p. 6-6)
➥ Turns the split function ON and OFF when pushed.
➥ Turns the split function ON, equalizes the sub readout frequency to the main readout and sets the sub readout for frequency input when pushed for 1 sec. in non-FM modes. (Quick split function)
• The offset frequency is shifted from the main readout frequency in FM mode. (p. 12-14)
• The quick split function can be turned OFF using set mode. (p. 12-14)
➥ Turns the split function ON and shifts the sub readout frequency after inputting an offset.

70 MAIN BAND ACCESS SWITCH [MAIN]
Selects access to the main readout.
• The main readout frequency is clearly displayed. The sub readout functions only during split operation or dualwatch.

71 MAIN/SUB EQUALIZING SWITCH [M=S]
Equalizes the sub readout frequency to the main readout frequency when pushed for 1 sec.

72 AUTOMATIC TUNING SWITCH [AUTO TUNE] (for MAIN band)
73 AUTOMATIC TUNING SWITCH [AUTO TUNE] (for SUB band)
Turns the automatic tuning function ON and OFF in CW and AM modes.

IMPORTANT!
When receiving a weak signal, or receiving a signal with interference, the automatic tuning function may not be tuned, or tuned into an undesired signal.

74 MAIN DIAL
Changes the displayed frequency (main band), selects set mode setting, etc.

75 MAIN/SUB CHANGE SWITCH [CHANGE]
Switches the frequency and selected memory channel between main and sub readouts when pushed.
• Switches between transmit frequency and receive frequency when the split frequency function is ON. (p. 6-6)

76 LOCK SWITCH [LOCK] (for MAIN band; p. 5-18)
77 LOCK SWITCH [LOCK] (for SUB band; p. 5-18)
Push to switch the dial lock function ON and OFF.

78 SUB BAND ACCESS SWITCH [SUB]
Selects access to the sub readout.
• The sub readout frequency is clearly displayed. The main readout functions only during split operation or dualwatch.

79 SUB DIAL
Changes the displayed frequency in sub band.

■ Front panel (continued)
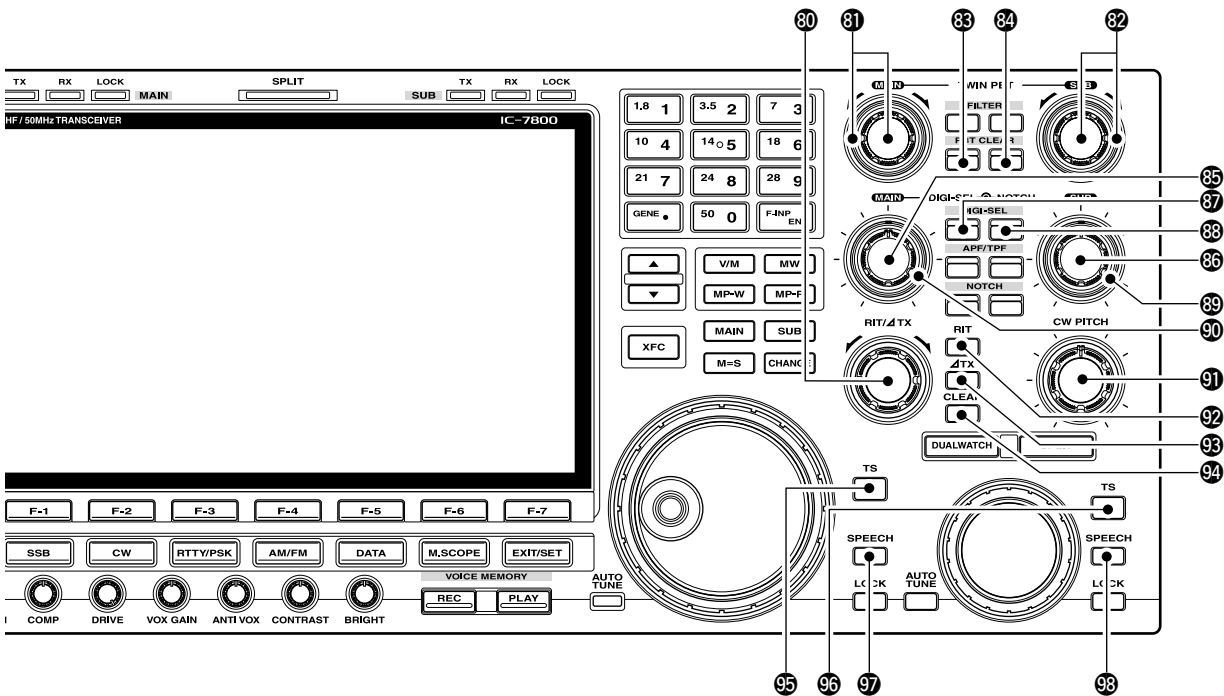
⑧⓪ **RIT/⊿TX CONTROL [RIT/⊿TX]** (pgs. 5-10, 6-4)
Shifts the receive and/or transmit frequency without changing the transmit and/or receive frequency while the RIT and/or ⊿TX functions are ON.
• Rotate the control clockwise to increase the frequency, or rotate the control counterclockwise to decrease the frequency.
• The shift frequency range is ±9.999 kHz in 1 Hz steps (or ±9.99 kHz in 10 Hz steps).

Frequency increases

Frequency decreases
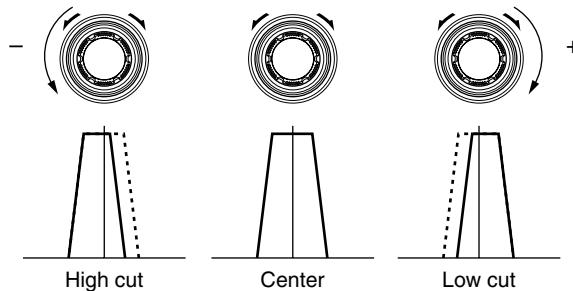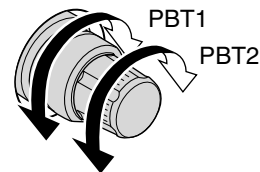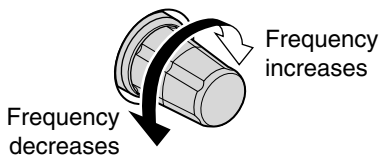
⑧① **PASSBAND TUNING CONTROLS [TWIN PBT]**
(for MAIN band; p. 5-12)
⑧② **PASSBAND TUNING CONTROLS [TWIN PBT]**
(for SUB band; p. 5-12)
Adjust the receiver's "passband width" of the DSP filter.
• Passband width and shift frequency are displayed in the multi-function display.
• Push [PBT CLEAR] for 1 sec. to clear the settings when not in use.
• Variable range is set to half of the IF filter passband width. 25 Hz steps and 50 Hz steps are available.

✔ What is the PBT control?
General PBT function electronically narrows the IF passband width to reject interference. This transceiver uses the DSP circuit for the PBT function.

PBT1
PBT2

High cut   Center   Low cut

⑧③ **PBT CLEAR SWITCH [PBT CLEAR]**
(for MAIN band; p. 5-12)
⑧④ **PBT CLEAR SWITCH [PBT CLEAR]**
(for SUB band; p. 5-12)
Clears the PBT settings when pushed for 1 sec.
• The [PBT CLEAR] indicator above this switch lights when PBT is in use.

⑧⑤ **DIGITAL RF SELECTOR CONTROL [DIGI-SEL]**
(for MAIN band; p. 5-19)
⑧⑥ **DIGITAL RF SELECTOR CONTROL [DIGI-SEL]**
(for SUB band; p. 5-19)
Adjusts the digital RF selector center frequency.
• The control can be used as the audio peak filter adjustment (p. 12-17)

Higher frequency
Lower frequency
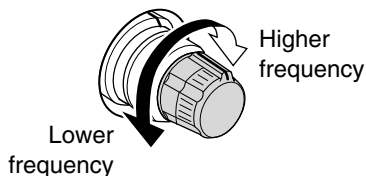
⑧⑦ **DIGITAL RF SELECTOR SWITCH [DIGI-SEL]**
(for MAIN band; p. 5-19)
⑧⑧ **DIGITAL RF SELECTOR SWITCH [DIGI-SEL]**
(for SUB band; p. 5-19)
Turns the digital RF selector ON and OFF.
• The [DIGI-SEL] indicator lights green when the selector is in use.

⑧⑨ **MANUAL NOTCH FILTER CONTROL [NOTCH]**
(for SUB band; outer control; p. 5-19)
⑨⓪ **MANUAL NOTCH FILTER CONTROL [NOTCH]**
(for MAIN band; outer control; p. 5-19)
Varies the peak frequency of the manual notch filter to pick out a receive signal from interference while the manual notch function is ON.
• Notch filter center frequency:
  SSB : –1060 Hz to 4040 Hz
  CW : CW pitch freq. + 2540 Hz to CW pitch freq. –2540 Hz
  AM : –5100 Hz to 5100 Hz

Higher frequency
Lower frequency
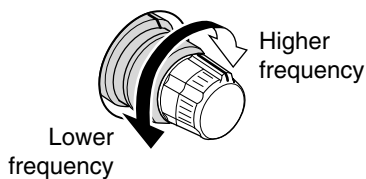
⑨① **CW PITCH CONTROL [CW PITCH]** (p. 4-5)
Shifts the received CW audio pitch and monitored CW audio pitch without changing the operating frequency.

High frequency
Low frequency
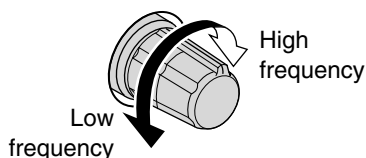
⑨② **RIT SWITCH [RIT]** (p. 5-10)
➟ Turns the RIT function ON and OFF when pushed.
  • Use [RIT/⊿TX] control to vary the RIT frequency.
➟ Adds the RIT shift frequency to the operating frequency when pushed for 1 sec.

✔ *What is the RIT function?*
The RIT (Receiver Incremental Tuning) shifts the receive frequency without shifting the transmit frequency.

This is useful for fine tuning stations calling you on an off-frequency or when you prefer to listen to slightly different-sounding voice characteristics, etc.

⑨③ **⊿TX SWITCH [⊿TX]** (p. 6-4)
➟ Turns the ⊿TX function ON and OFF when pushed.
  • Use [RIT/⊿TX] control to vary the ⊿TX frequency.
➟ Adds the ⊿TX shift frequency to the operating frequency when pushed for 1 sec.

✔ *What is the ⊿TX function?*
The ⊿TX shifts the transmit frequency without shifting the receive frequency. This is useful for simple split frequency operation in CW, etc.

⑨④ **CLEAR SWITCH [CLEAR]** (pgs. 5-10, 6-4)
Clears the RIT/⊿TX shift frequency when pushed for 1 sec. or when pushed momentarily, depending on the quick RIT/⊿TX clear function setting (p. 12-17).

⑨⑤ **QUICK TUNING SWITCH [TS]** (for MAIN band)
⑨⑥ **QUICK TUNING SWITCH [TS]** (for SUB band)
➟ Turns the quick tuning step ON and OFF. (p. 3-6)
  • While the quick tuning indicator, "▼," is displayed above the frequency indication, the frequency can be changed in programmed kHz steps.
  • 0.1, 1, 5, 9, 10, 12.5, 20 and 25 kHz steps are available for each operating mode independently.
➟ When the quick tuning step is OFF, push for 1 sec. to turn the 1 Hz tuning step ON and OFF. (p. 3-7)
➟ When the quick tuning step is ON, push for 1 sec. to enter quick tuning step set mode. (p. 3-6)

⑨⑦ **SPEECH SWITCH [SPEECH]**
(for MAIN band; p. 13-3)
⑨⑧ **SPEECH SWITCH [SPEECH]**
(for SUB band; p. 13-3)
➟ Push to announce the S-meter indication and the selected readout frequency.
➟ The selected operating mode is additionally announced when pushed for 1 sec.

■ Rear panel
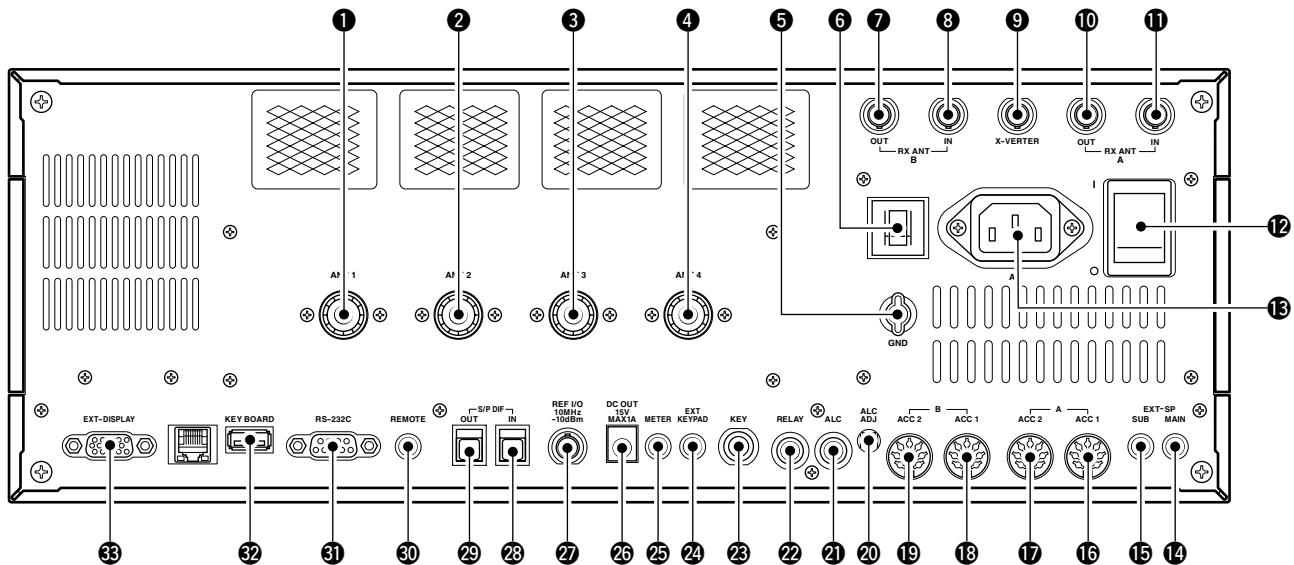
❶ **ANTENNA CONNECTOR 1 [ANT 1]** (p. 2-4)
❷ **ANTENNA CONNECTOR 2 [ANT 2]** (p. 2-4)
❸ **ANTENNA CONNECTOR 3 [ANT 3]** (p. 2-4)
❹ **ANTENNA CONNECTOR 4 [ANT 4]** (p. 2-4)
Accept a 50 Ω antenna with a PL-259 plug connector.

❺ **GROUND TERMINAL [GND]** (p. 2-3)
Connect this terminal to a ground to prevent electrical shocks, TVI, BCI and other problems.

❻ **CIRCUIT BREAKER**
Cuts off the AC input when over current occurs.

❼ **RECEIVE ANTENNA B OUT [RX ANT B– OUT]**
❽ **RECEIVE ANTENNA B IN [RX ANT B– IN]**
Located between the transmit/receive switching circuit and receiver's RF stage in SUB band (MAIN band during split operation).

Connects an external unit, such as preamplifier, RF filter, using BNC connector, if desired.

When no external unit is connected, [RX ANT B– OUT] and [RX ANT B– IN] must be shorted with the supplied coaxial cable. (p. 2-2)
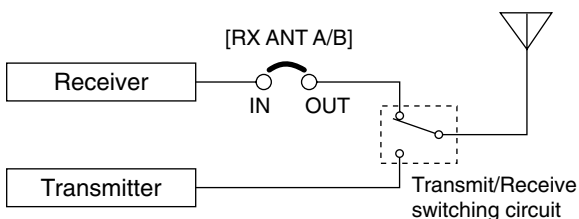
❾ **TRANSVERTER CONNECTOR [X-VERTER]** (p. 2-5)
External transverter input/output connector. Activated by voltage applied to [ACC 2] pin 6, or the transverter function is in use. (pgs. 2-10, 4-6)

❿ **RECEIVE ANTENNA A OUT [RX ANT A– OUT]**
⓫ **RECEIVE ANTENNA A IN [RX ANT A– IN]**
Located between the transmit/receive switching circuit and receiver's RF stage in MAIN band (SUB band during split operation).

Connects an external unit, such as preamplifier, RF filter, using BNC connector, if desired.

When no external unit is connected, [RX ANT A– OUT] and [RX ANT A– IN] must be shorted with the supplied coaxial cable. (p. 2-2)

⓬ **MAIN POWER SWITCH [I/O]** (p. 3-2)
Turns the internal power supply ON and OFF.

⓭ **AC POWER SOCKET [AC]** (p. 2-4)
Connects the supplied AC power cable to an AC outlet.

⓮ **EXTERNAL SPEAKER JACK MAIN [EXT-SP MAIN]** (p. 2-5)
⓯ **EXTERNAL SPEAKER JACK SUB [EXT-SP SUB]** (p. 2-5)
Connects an external speaker (4–8 Ω), if desired.

⑯ **ACCESSORY SOCKET 1 A [ACC 1–A]**
⑰ **ACCESSORY SOCKET 2 A [ACC 2–A]**
⑱ **ACCESSORY SOCKET 1 B [ACC 1–B]**
⑲ **ACCESSORY SOCKET 2 B [ACC 2–B]**
Enable connection of external equipment such as a liner amplifier, an automatic antenna selector/tuner, TNC for data communications, etc.
• See p. 2-10 for socket information.

⑳ **ALC LEVEL ADJUSTMENT POT [ALC ADJ]**
Adjusts the ALC levels.
No adjustment is required when the ALC output level of the connected non-Icom linear amplifier is 0 to –4 V DC.

㉑ **ALC INPUT JACK [ALC]** (p. 2-7)
Connects to the ALC output jack of a non-Icom linear amplifier.

㉒ **T/R CONTROL JACK [RELAY]** (p. 2-7)
Goes to ground when transmitting to control an external unit.

NOTE: T/R control voltage and current must be lower than 16 V DC/0.5 A (or 250 V AC, 200 mA with MOS-FET switching).

㉓ **STRAIGHT KEY JACK [KEY]** (p. 2-4)
Accepts a straight key or external electronic keyer with ¼ inch standard plug.
• [ELEC-KEY] on the front panel can be used for a straight key or external electronic keyer. Deactivate the internal electronic keyer in keyer set mode. (p. 4-12)

(⊕)
(⊖)
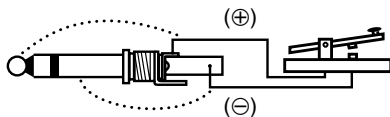
㉔ **EXTERNAL KEYPAD JACK [EXT KEYPAD]** (p. 2-6)
Connects an external keypad for direct voice memory or electronic keyer control.
Transceiver mute control (both transmit and receive) line is also equipped.

㉕ **METER JACK [METER]** (p. 2-6)
Outputs the receiving signal strength level signal, transmit output power, VSWR, ALC, speech compression, V_D or I_D level for external meter indication.

㉖ **DC OUTPUT JACK [DC OUT]** (p. 2-6)
Outputs a regulated 14 V DC (approx.) for external equipment. Connected in parallel with 13.8 V outputs of [ACC 1] and [ACC 2]. (max. 1 A in total)

⊖ ⊕
⊕ ⊖
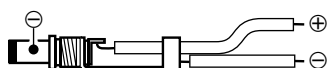
㉗ **REFERENCE SIGNAL INPUT/OUTPUT TERMINAL [REF I/O]**
Inputs/outputs a 10 MHz reference signal.

㉘ **S/P DIF INPUT TERMINAL [S/P DIF– IN]** (p. 2-6)
㉙ **S/P DIF OUTPUT TERMINAL [S/P DIF– OUT]** (p. 2-6)
Connects an external equipment, that S/P DIF input/output are supported.

㉚ **CI-V REMOTE CONTROL JACK [REMOTE]** (p. 2-5)
➥ Connects a PC via the optional CT-17 CI-V LEVEL CONVERTER for external control of the transceiver functions.
➥ Used for transceive operation with another Icom CI-V transceiver or receiver.

㉛ **RS-232C TERMINAL [RS-232C]** (p. 2-5)
Connects an RS-232C cable, D-sub 9-pin to connect the IC-7800 to a PC.
Can be used for remotely control the IC-7800 without the optional CT-17, or for RTTY/PSK31 decoded signal output.

㉜ **KEYBOARD CONNECTOR [KEYBOARD]** (p. 2-6)
Connects a PC keyboard for RTTY and PSK31 operations.
• USB (Universal Serial Bus) type keyboard can be connected.

㉝ **EXTERNAL DISPLAY TERMINAL [EXT-DISPLAY]** (p. 2-6)
Connects to an external display.
• At least 800×600 pixel display is necessary.

■ LCD display
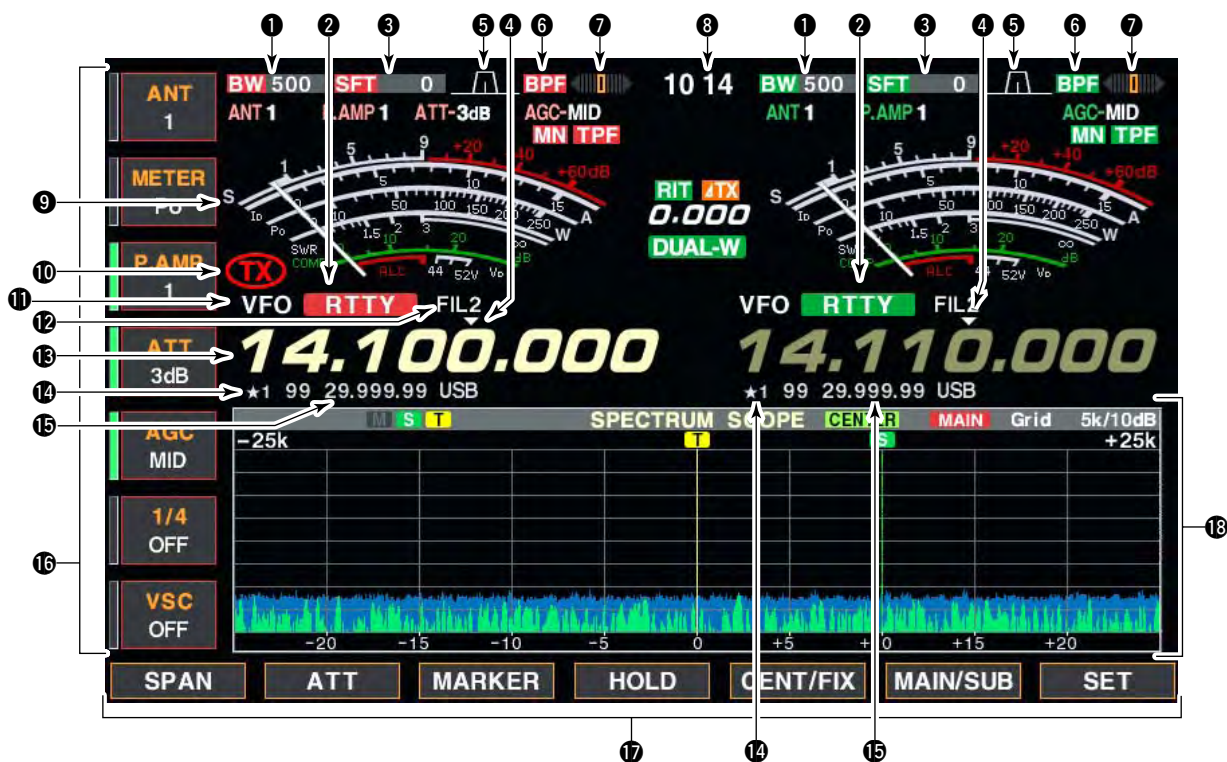
❶ BAND WIDTH INDICATOR (p. 5-12)
Shows the passband width of the IF filter.

❷ MODE INDICATOR
Shows the selected mode.

❸ SHIFT FREQUENCY INDICATOR (p. 5-12)
Shows the shift frequency of the IF filter.

❹ QUICK TUNING INDICATOR (p. 3-6)
Appears when the quick tuning step function is in use.

❺ PASSBAND WIDTH INDICATOR (p. 5-12)
Graphically displays the passband width for twin PBT operation and center frequency for IF shift operation.

❻ BANDPASS FILTER INDICATOR
Appears when the narrow filter (500 Hz or less) is selected during CW, RTTY or PSK31 operation.

❼ RTTY TUNING INDICATOR
Shows the tuning level in RTTY mode.

❽ CLOCK READOUT
Shows the current time.

❾ S/RF METER (p. 3-10)
Shows the signal strength while receiving. Shows the relative output power, SWR, ALC or compression levels while transmitting.

❿ TX INDICATOR
Indicates the frequency readout for transmit.

⓫ VFO/MEMORY CHANNEL INDICATOR (p. 3-3)
Indicates the VFO mode or selected memory channel number.

⓬ IF FILTER INDICATOR
Shows the selected IF filter number.

⓭ FREQUENCY READOUTS
Shows the operating frequency.
• Outline characters are used for non-accessing readout.

⓮ SELECT MEMORY CHANNEL INDICATOR (p. 9-7)
Indicates the displayed memory channel is set as a select memory channel.

⓯ MEMORY CHANNEL READOUTS
➥ Shows the selected memory channel contents in VFO mode.
➥ Shows the VFO contents in memory mode.

⓰ MULTI-FUNCTION SWITCH GUIDE
Indicates the function of the multi-function switches.

⓱ LCD FUNCTION SWITCH GUIDE
Indicates the function of the LCD function switches ([F-1] – [F-7]).

⓲ MULTI-FUNCTION SCREEN
Shows the screens for the multi-function digital meter, spectrum scope, voice recorder, memory channel, scan, memory keyer, RTTY decoder, PSK decoder, IF filter selection or set modes, etc.

■ Screen menu arrangement

The following screens can be selected from the start up screen. Choose the desired screen using the following chart.

Pushing [EXIT/SET] several times returns to the start up screen. See p. 12-3 for set mode arrangement.
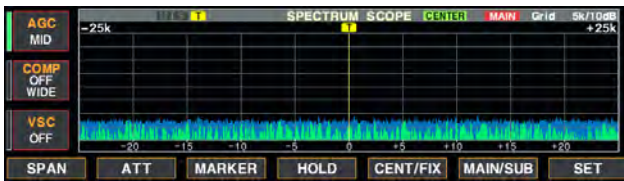
• **PSK31 decoder screen** (p. 4-21)

F-3

• **Spectrum scope screen** (p. 5-2)
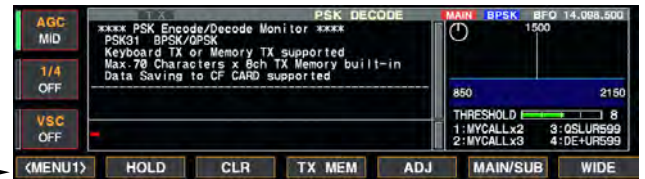
• **Memory channel screen** (p. 8-3)

F-4
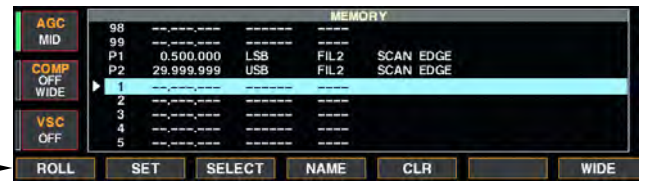
• **Voice recoder screen** (p. 7-3)

F-2

• **Scan screen** (VFO mode; p. 9-4)

F-5
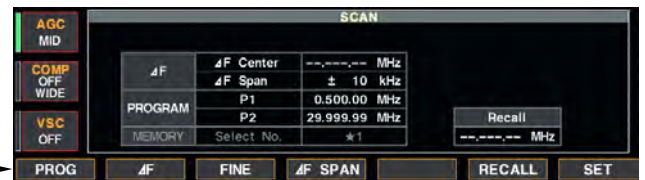
• **Memory keyer screen** (CW mode; p. 4-8)

F-3

• **Scan screen** (Memory mode; p. 9-6)

F-5

• **RTTY decoder screen** (p. 4-13)

F-3

• **Set mode menu screen** (p. 12-2)

F-7

INSTALLATION AND CONNECTIONS   **Section**   **2**

CAUTION!: The transceiver weighs approx. 25 kg (55 lb). 2 peoples should be present to carry, lift up or turn over the transceiver, etc.

■ Unpacking

After unpacking, immediately report any damage to the delivering carrier or dealer. Keep the shipping cartons.

For a description and a diagram of accessory equipment included with the IC-7800, see 'Supplied accessories' on p. iii of this manual.

■ Antenna jumper cable connection
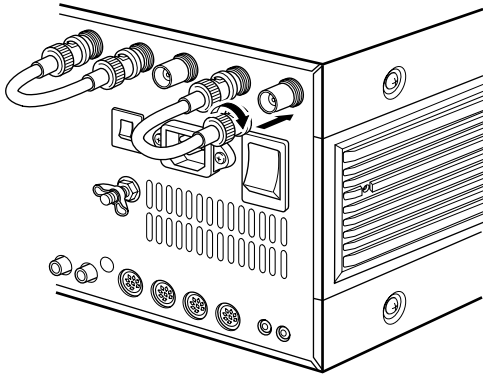
Connect the supplied coaxial cable (terminated with BNC connectors) between [RX ANT A— IN] and [RX ANT A— OUT], and, [RX ANT B— IN] and [RX ANT B— OUT], respectively.

When connecting an external filter unit, pre-amplifier, etc., connect the unit between [RX ANT A/B— IN] and [RX ANT A/B— OUT] connectors.

■ Selecting a location
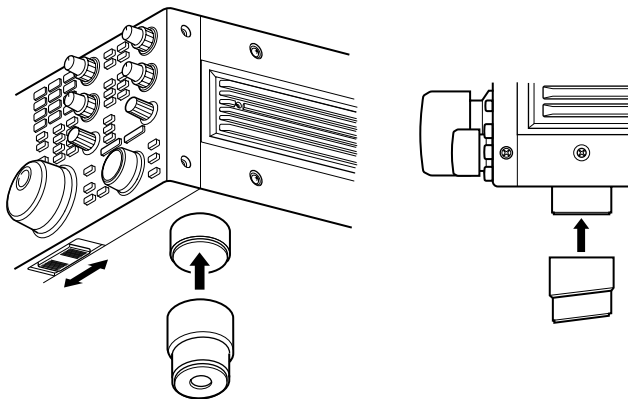
Select a location for the transceiver that allows adequate air circulation, free from extreme heat, cold, or vibrations, and away from TV sets, TV antenna elements, radios and other electromagnetic sources.

The base of the transceiver has an adjustable stand for desktop use. Set the stand to one of two angles depending on your operating conditions.

■ Rack mounting handle attachment
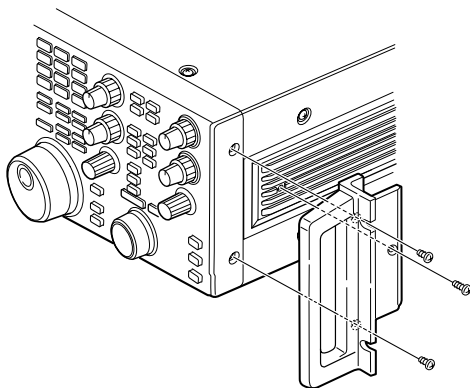
Remove the four screws from both sides of the front panel and the two screws from both sides of the side panel, then attach the rack mounting handles to the sides of the transceiver using the supplied screws.

■ Grounding
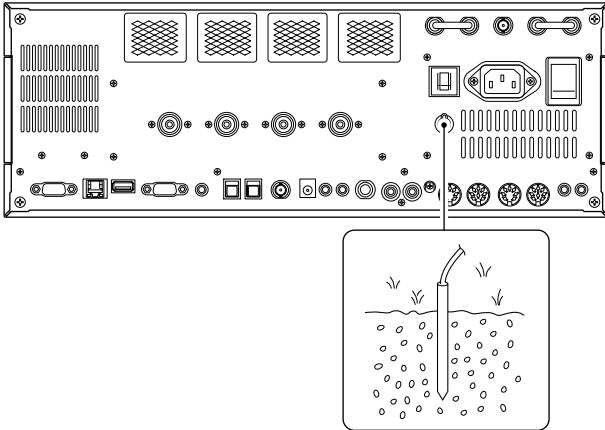
To prevent electrical shock, television interference (TVI), broadcast interference (BCI) and other problems, ground the transceiver through the GROUND terminal on the rear panel.

For best results, connect a heavy gauge wire or strap to a long earth-sunk copper rod. Make the distance between the [GND] terminal and ground as short as possible.

⚠ **WARNING: NEVER** connect the [GND] terminal to a gas or electric pipe, since the connection could cause an explosion or electric shock.

■ Antenna connection

PL-259 CONNECTOR INSTALLATION EXAMPLE

① Slide the coupling ring down. Strip the cable jacket and soft solder.
30 mm
Coupling ring   10 mm (soft solder)

② Strip the cable as shown at left. Soft solder the center conductor.
10 mm Soft solder
1–2 mm

③ solder solder
Slide the connector body on and solder it.

④ Screw the coupling ring onto the connector body.

30 mm ≈ 9⁄8 in   10 mm ≈ 3⁄8 in   1–2 mm ≈ 1⁄16 in

For radio communications, the antenna is of critical importance, along with output power and sensitivity. Select antenna(s), such as a well-matched 50 Ω antenna, and feedline. 1.5:1 or better of Voltage Standing Wave Ratio (VSWR) is recommended for your desired band. Of course, the transmission line should be a coaxial cable.

When using 1 antenna, use the [ANT1] connector.

CAUTION: Protect your transceiver from lightning by using a lightning arrestor.

Antenna SWR
Each antenna is tuned for a specified frequency range and SWR may be increased out-of-range. When the SWR is higher than approx. 2.0:1, the transceiver's power drops to protect the final transistor. In this case, an antenna tuner is useful to match the transceiver and antenna. Low SWR allows full power for transmitting even when using the antenna tuner. The IC-7800 has an SWR meter to monitor the antenna SWR continuously.

■ CF (Compact Flash) memory card

Accessing indicator
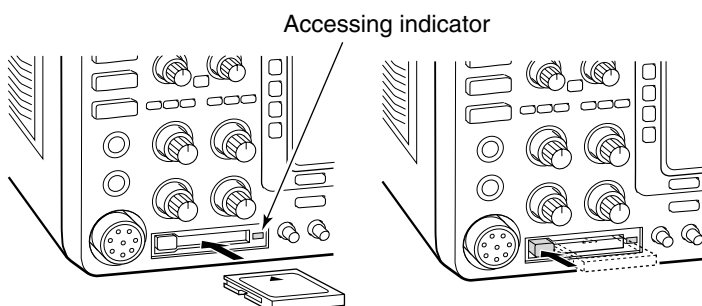
Insert the supplied CF (Compact Flash) memory card into the CF memory card slot.
• To remove the CF memory card, push-in the button, located at left hand side of the slot.

Make sure the direction of the memory card. **NEVER** insert or remove the CF memory card during accessing indicator lights or blinks.

■ Required connections

◇ Front panel

CW key
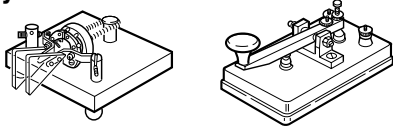
A straight key can be used when the internal electronic keyer is turned OFF in keyer set mode. (p. 4-12)

Microphones (p. 2-9)

Optional SM-20
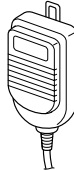
Optional HM-36
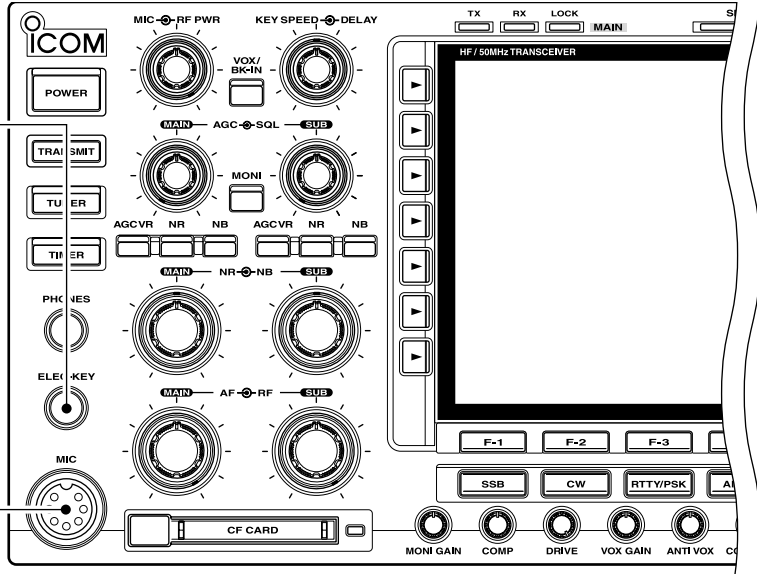
◇ Rear panel

Antenna 1, 2, 3, 4 (p. 2-3)

[Example]: ANT1 for 1.8–18 MHz bands, ANT 2 for 21–28 bands
ANT3 for 50 MHz band, ANT 4 for receive antenna

A jumper cable is connected.
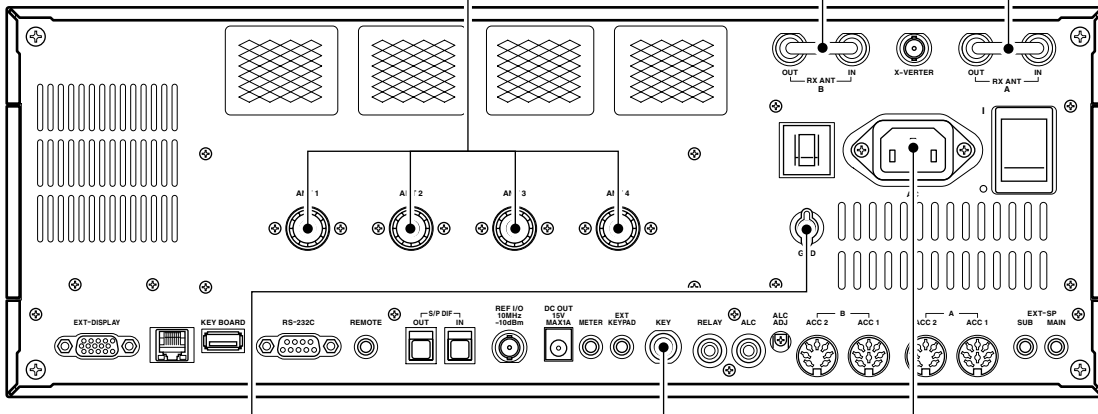
Ground (p. 2-3)
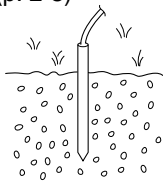
Use the heaviest gauge wire or strap available and make the connection as short as possible.

Grounding prevents electrical shocks, TVI and other problems.

Straight key
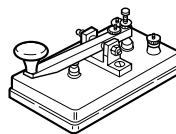
AC outlet

⚠ WARNING:
Use the supplied AC power cable only.

■ Advanced connections

◇ Front panel

Headphones

CF (Compact Flash) memory card

MIC
The AFSK modulation signal can also be input from [MIC].

◇ Rear panel— 1

Antenna 1, 2, 3, 4 (p. 2-7)
Connects a linear amplifier, antenna selector, etc.

RX ANT A/B IN/OUT
Connects an external preamp or lowpass filter.

[REMOTE], [RS-232C] (p. 14-2)
Used for computer control and transceive operation.
The optional CT-17 is required when connecting a PC to [REMOTE].

[X-VERTER]
Connects a transverter for V/UHF band use.

[RELAY], [ALC] (p.2-7)
Used for connecting a non-Icom linear amplifier.

ACC sockets (pgs.2-8, 2-10)

External speaker (p. 15-4)
SP-20 (option)

◇ **Rear panel— 2**

External Display

Connects a monitor display (at least 800×600 resolution) directory. Video output signal can be turned ON and OFF in set mode (p. 12-12)

Keyboard
Connects an USB type PC keyboard directly for RTTY/PSK31 operation, as well as other text edit operation.

[DC OUT]
Outputs regulated 14 V (approx.) DC for external equipment power supply. (max. 1 A capacity)
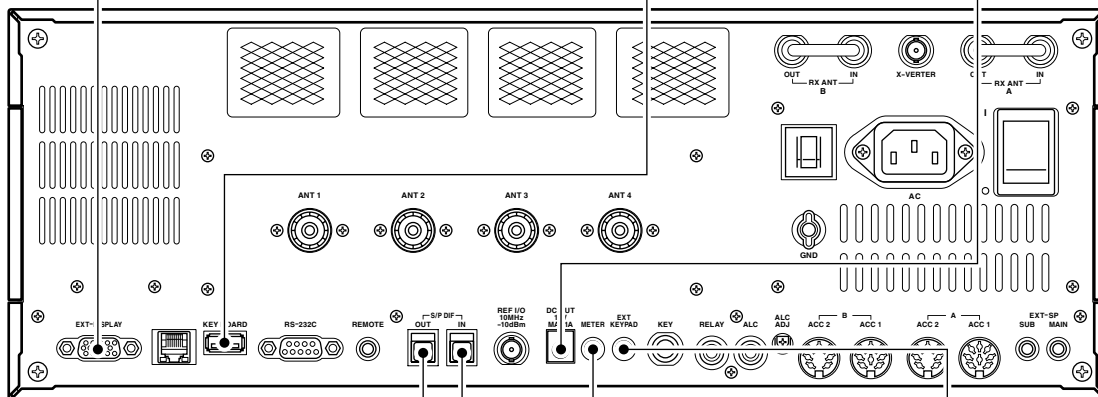
[S/P DIF— IN/OUT]

Connects a PC for audio signal data input/output.

[METER]
Connects an external meter, etc.

MAIN band meter

SUB band meter

3.5 (d) mm; ⅛″ plug
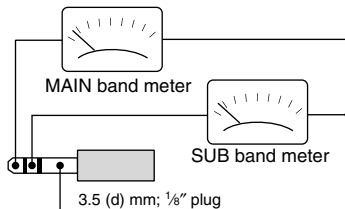
External keypad
Connects an external keypad for direct voice memory and memory keyer controls.

USER EXTERNAL KEYPAD

3.5 (d) mm; ⅛″ plug

1.5 kΩ ±5%	1.5 kΩ ±5%	2.2 kΩ ±5%	4.7 kΩ ±5%
S1 (T1/M1)	S2 (T2/M2)	S3 (T3/M3)	S4 (T4/M4)
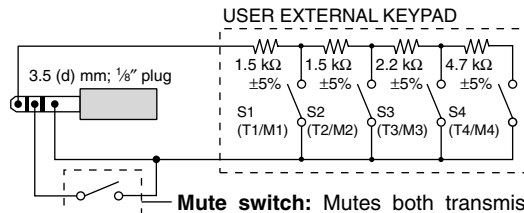
Mute switch: Mutes both transmission and reception when switched ON this switch for transceive operaton, etc.

■ Linear amplifier connections

◇ Connecting the IC-PW1
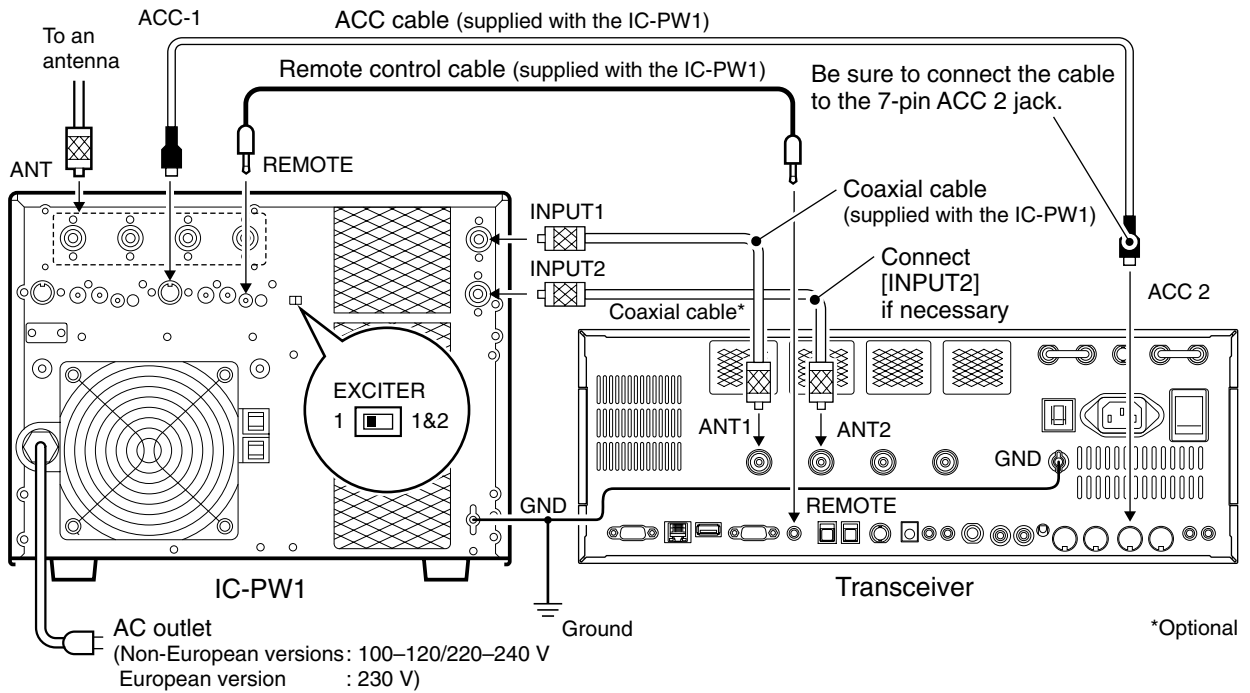
◇ Connecting a non-Icom linear amplifier
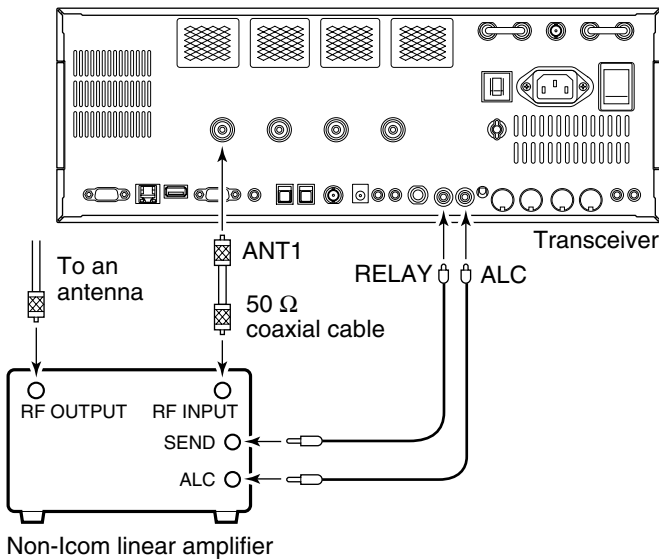
⚠ WARNING:

Set the transceiver output power and linear amplifier ALC output level referring to the linear amplifier instruction manual.

The ALC input level must be in the range 0 V to –4 V, and the transceiver does not accept positive voltage. Non-matched ALC and RF power settings could cause a fire or ruin the linear amplifier.

The maximum control level of [RELAY] jack is DC 16 V/0.5 A with initial setting, and 250 V/200 mA with "MOS-FET" setting (see p. 12-9 for details). Use an external relay unit when your non-Icom linear amplifier require the control level that higher voltage and/or larger current capacity.

■ Transverter jack information

Transverter connector

Rear panel view
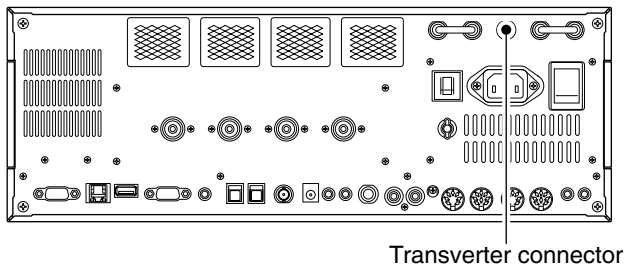
When 2 to 13.8 V is applied to pin 6 of [ACC 2], the [X-VERTER] connector is activated for transverter operation and the antenna connectors do not receive or transmit any signals. (p. 4-6)

While receiving, [X-VERTER] connector can be activated as an input terminal from an external transverter.

While transmitting, the [X-VERTER] connector outputs signals of the displayed frequency at –20 dBm (22 mV) as signals for the external transverter.

■ FSK and AFSK (SSTV) connections

To connect a TNC or scan converter, etc., refer to the diagram below.

◇ **FSK operation— when connecting to [ACC 1]**

• **When using a PC application**

RTTY —— RTTY OUTPUT

GND —— GND

AF —— AUDIO INPUT

SEND —— PTT

Connect to serial port, parallel port, speaker jack, microphone jack and line IN/OUT jack, etc. See the instruction manual of the application for details.

PC

• **When using a TNC**

RTTY —— RTTY OUTPUT

GND —— GND

AF —— AUDIO INPUT

SEND —— PTT

TNC or scan converter

RS-232C

Rear panel view

◇ **AFSK operation**

• **When connecting to [ACC 1]** ┃ • **When using a PC application**

1 ← Audio output

2 ← AF input

3 ← GND

4 ← PTT

5

6 †

Connect to serial port, parallel port, speaker jack, microphone jack and line IN/OUT jack, etc. See the instruction manual of the application for details.

PC

• **When connecting to [MIC]** ┃ • **When using a TNC**

1 ← AFSK output

2

3 ← AF input

4 ← PTT*

5 ← GND

6 † ← SQL input †

TNC or scan converter

RS-232C

*When using the VOX function, no need to connect. Refer to the instruction manual of the external equipment (TNC, etc.).
†When connecting the squelch line, consult the necessary manual (TNC, etc.).

■ Microphone connector information

(Front panel view)

⑧ Main readout AF output
(varies with [AF]/[BAL])

① Microphone input

⑦ GND
(Microphone ground)

② +8 V DC output

⑥ GND (PTT ground)

③ Frequency up/down

⑤ PTT

④ Main readout squelch switch
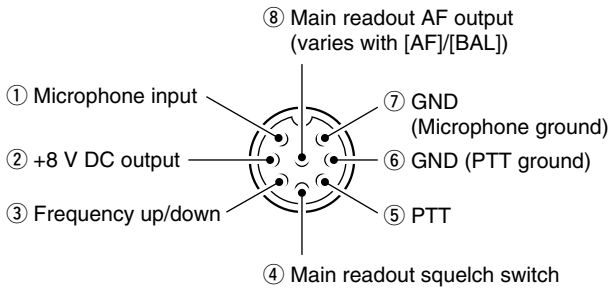
[MIC] Pin No.	FUNCTION	DESCRIPTION
②	+8 V DC output	Max. 10 mA
③	Frequency up	Ground
	Frequency down	Ground through 470 Ω
④	Squelch open	"Low" level
	Squelch closed	"High" level

CAUTION: DO NOT short pin 2 to ground as this can damage the internal 8 V regulator.
NOTE: DC voltage is applied to pin 1 for microphone operation. Take care when using a non-Icom microphone.

■ Microphones (options)

◇ SM-20
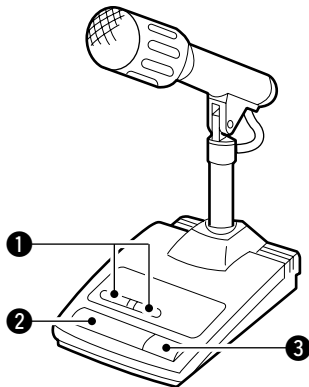
◇ HM-36
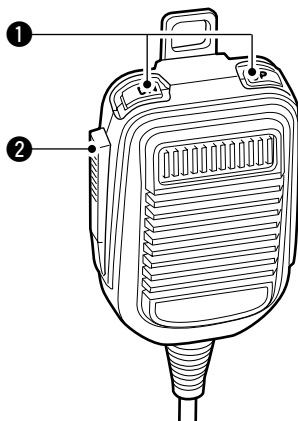
❶ **UP/DOWN SWITCHES [UP]/[DN]**
Change the selected readout frequency or memory channel.
• Continuous pushing changes the frequency or memory channel number continuously.
• While pushing [XFC], the transmit readout frequency can be controlled while in split frequency operation.
• The [UP]/[DN] switch can simulate a key paddle. Preset in the keyer set mode. (p. 4-12)
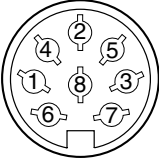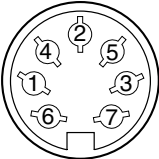
❷ **PTT SWITCH**
Push and hold to transmit; release to receive.

❸ **PTT LOCK SWITCH** (available for SM-20 only)
Push to toggles between transmit and receive.

■ Accessory connector information

ACC 1	PIN No.	NAME	DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATIONS
	1	RTTY	Controls RTTY keying	"High" level : More than 2.4 V "Low" level : Less than 0.6 V Output current : Less than 2 mA
	2	GND	Connects to ground.	Connected in parallel with ACC 2 pin 2.
	3	SEND	Input/output pin. Goes to ground when transmitting. When grounded, transmits.	Ground level : –0.5 V to 0.8 V Output current : Less than 20 mA Input current (Tx) : Less than 200 mA Connected in parallel with ACC 2 pin 3.
	4	MOD	Modulator input. Connects to a modulator.	Input impedance : 10 kΩ Input level : Approx. 100 mV rms
	5	AF	AF detector output. Fixed, regardless of [AF] position in default settings. (see notes below)	Output impedance : 4.7 kΩ Output level : 100–300 mV rms
	6	SQLS	Squelch output. Goes to ground when squelch opens.	SQL open : Less than 0.3 V/5 mA SQL closed : More than 6.0 V/100 µA
	7	13.8 V	13.8 V output when power is ON.	Output current : Max. 1 A Connected in parallel with ACC 2 pin 7.
	8	ALC	ALC voltage input.	Control voltage : –4 V to 0 V Input impedance : More than 10 kΩ Connected in parallel with ACC 2 pin 5.

ACC 2	PIN No.	NAME	DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATIONS
	1	8 V	Regulated 8 V output.	Output voltage : 8 V ±0.3 V Output current : Less than 10 mA
	2	GND		Same as ACC 1 pin 2.
	3	SEND		Same as ACC 1 pin 3.
	4	BAND	Band voltage output. (Varies with amateur band)	Output voltage : 0 to 8.0 V
	5	ALC		Same as ACC 1 pin 8.
	6	TRV	Activates [X-VERTER] input/output when "HIGH" voltage is applied.	Input impedance : More than 10 kΩ Input voltage : 2 to 13.8 V
	7	13.8 V		Same as ACC 1 pin 7.

NOTE: If the CW side tone level limit or beep level limit is in use, the CW side tone or beep tone decreases from the fixed level when the [AF] control is rotated above a specified level, respectively. (p. 12-5)

BASIC OPERATIONS   Section   3

■ When first applying power (CPU resetting)

Before first applying power, make sure all connections required for your system are complete by referring to Section 2. Then, reset the transceiver using the following procedure.

⁝ Resetting **CLEARS** all programmed contents in memory channels and returns programmed values in set mode to default values.

① Turn the main power ON with [I/O] on the rear panel.
   • The transceiver power is still OFF and the [POWER] indicator lights orange.
② While pushing and holding [F-INP•ENT] and [MW], push [POWER] to turn power ON.
   • The CPU is reset.
   • The CPU start up and it takes approx. 5 sec.
   • The transceiver displays its initial VFO frequencies when resetting is complete.
③ Correct the set mode settings after resetting, if desired.

⁝ Under cooler temperatures, the LCD may appear dark and unstable after turning power ON. This is normal and does not indicate any equipment malfunction.

[I/O]

[POWER]   [MW] [F-INP•ENT]
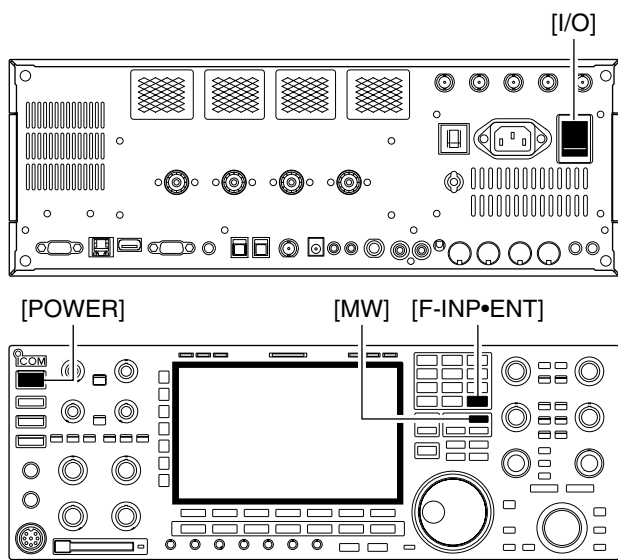
■ Initial settings

After resetting the transceiver, set controls as shown in the figure below.

[RF PWR]
: Max. clockwise

[MIC]
: 10–12 o'clock

[AGC]: 12 o'clock

[SQL]
: Max. counter-
clockwise

[AF]
: Max. counter-
clockwise

[RF]
: Max. clockwise

[MONI GAIN], [COMP], [DRIVE],
[VOX GAIN], [ANTI VOX]
: 12 o'clock

[DELAY]
: Max. clockwise

[KEY SPEED]
: 10–12 o'clock

[NR]
: Max. counter clockwise

[NB]
: Max. counter clockwise

[NOTCH]
: 12 o'clock

[DEGI-SEL]
: 12 o'clock

[CW PITCH]
: 12 o'clock
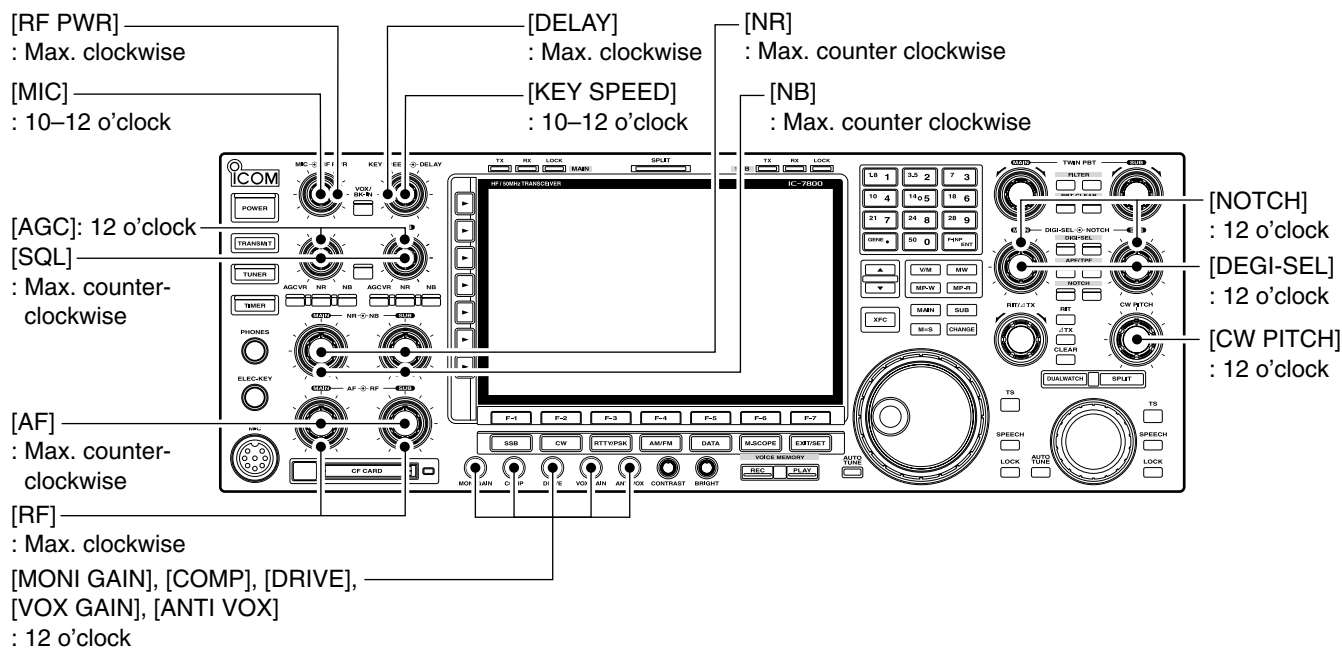
■ Main/Sub band selection
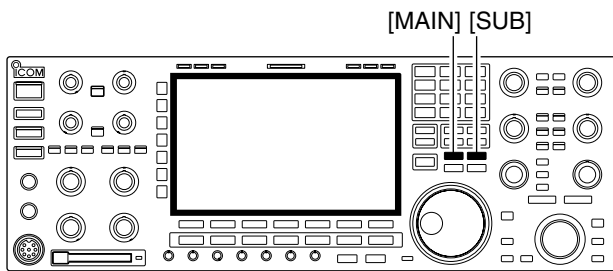
The IC-7800 has 2 bands, main and sub bands. The main band is displayed on the left hand side, and the sub band is displayed on the right hand side of the LCD. Some functions can only be accessed to the selected band and the transmission is only permitted for the main band (except the split frequency operation).

[MAIN] [SUB]

➥ Push [MAIN] to select the main band.
  • The key backlight for [MAIN] lights.
  • Main band's frequency readout highlighted.

➥ Push [SUB] to select the sub band.
  • The key backlight for [SUB] lights.
  • Sub band's frequency readout highlighted.

■ Selecting VFO/memory mode
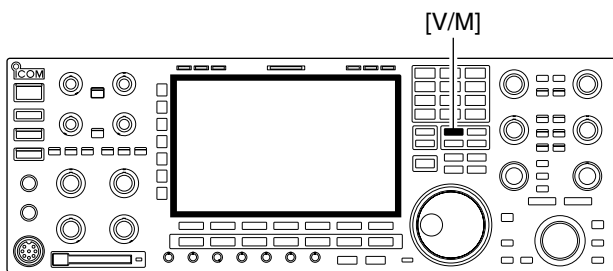
VFO is an abbreviation of Variable Frequency Oscillator, and is commonly referred to as a main tuning function.
The main dial is often called the "VFO knob."

[V/M]

➥ Push [V/M] to switch between VFO and memory modes.
  • "VFO" appears when VFO mode, or the selected memory channel number appears when memory mode is selected beside the frequency readout.
  • Pushing [V/M] for 1 sec. transfers the contents of the selected memory channel to VFO mode. (p. 8-5)

"VFO" indicator ────▶ VFO USB FIL2
14.100.00

Memory channel ────▶ 1 USB FIL2
number
14.100.00
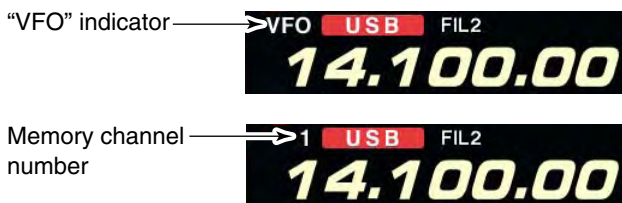
■ Selecting an operating band
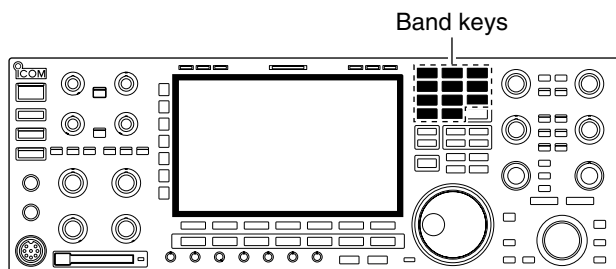
Band keys

The triple band stacking register provides 3 memories in one band. 3 sets of a frequency and operating mode on each band are automatically stored when used.

If a band key is pushed once, the frequency and operating mode last used are called up. When the key is pushed again, another stored frequency and operating mode are called up.

This function is convenient when you operate 3 operating modes on one band. For example, one register is used for a CW frequency, another for an SSB frequency and the other one for an RTTY frequency.

See the table below for a list of the band available and the default settings for each band.

BAND	REGISTER 1	REGISTER 2	REGISTER 3
1.8 MHz	1.900000 MHz CW	1.910000 MHz CW	1.915000 MHz CW
3.5 MHz	3.550000 MHz LSB	3.560000 MHz LSB	3.580000 MHz LSB
7 MHz	7.050000 MHz LSB	7.060000 MHz LSB	7.020000 MHz CW
10 MHz	10.120000 MHz CW	10.130000 MHz CW	10.140000 MHz CW
14 MHz	14.100000 MHz USB	14.200000 MHz USB	14.050000 MHz CW
18 MHz	18.100000 MHz USB	18.130000 MHz USB	18.150000 MHz USB
21 MHz	21.200000 MHz USB	21.300000 MHz USB	21.050000 MHz CW
24 MHz	24.950000 MHz USB	24.980000 MHz USB	24.900000 MHz CW
28 MHz	28.500000 MHz USB	29.500000 MHz USB	28.100000 MHz CW
50 MHz	50.100000 MHz USB	50.200000 MHz USB	51.000000 MHz FM
General	15.000000 MHz USB	15.100000 MHz USB	15.200000 MHz USB

◇ Using the band stacking registers

[Example]: 14 MHz band

1.8 **1**	3.5 **2**	7 **3**
10 **4**	14○ **5**	18 **6**
21 **7**	24 **8**	28 **9**
GENE ●	50 **0**	F-INP ENT
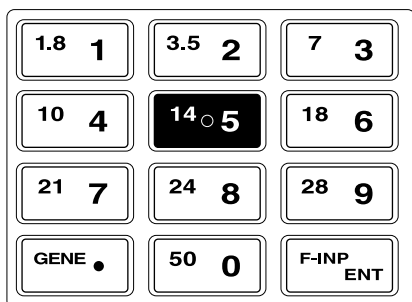
① Push [14•5], then select a frequency and an operating mode.
  • Frequency and operating mode are memorized in the first band stacking register.
② Push [14•5] again, then select another frequency and operating mode.
  • This frequency and operating mode are memorized in the second band stacking register.
③ Push [14•5] again, then select another frequency and operating mode.
  • This frequency and operating mode are memorized in the third band stacking register.
  • When a fourth frequency and operating mode are selected on a band, the first register set in step ①, is over written.

■ Frequency setting

The transceiver has several tuning methods for convenient frequency tuning.

◇ Tuning with the main dial

Band keys

Main dial   Sub dial
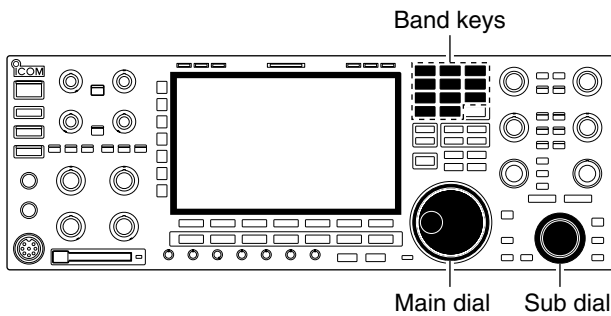
① Push the desired band key on the keypad 1–3 times.
• 3 different frequencies can be selected on each band with the band key.
• Push [MAIN] or [SUB] to select the band in advance.
② Rotate the main dial to set the desired frequency in main band, rotate the sub dial to set the desired frequency in sub band.

If the dial lock function is activated, the lock indicator lights, and the main dial does not function. In this case, push [LOCK] to deactivate the lock function. (see p. 5-18 for details)

✔ *CONVENIENT!*
The sub dial is available for when tuning frequency in sub band. The sub dial allows quick tuning in sub band without main/sub band selection.

◇ Direct frequency entry with the keypad
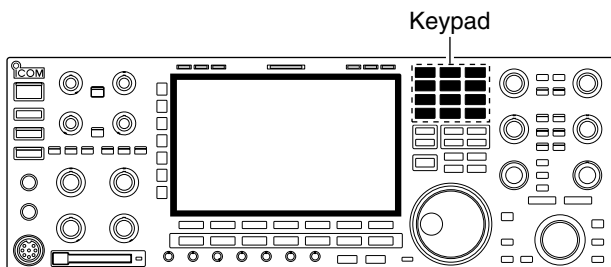
Keypad

The transceiver has a keypad for direct frequency entry as described below.

① Push [MAIN] or [SUB] to select the band.
② Push [F-INP•ENT].
• "**F-INP**" indicator appears and keypad backlight lights.
③ Input the desired frequency
• Push [GENE•.] to input ". (decimal point)" between the MHz units and kHz units.
④ Push [F-INP•ENT] to set the input frequency.
• To cancel the input, push [▲]/[▼] instead of [GENE•.].

[EXAMPLE]

7.00000 MHz
Push [F-INP ENT] [21 7] [F-INP ENT]
. .7 → 7.000.00
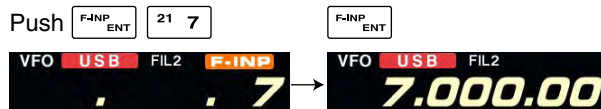
21.24000 MHz
Push [F-INP ENT] [3.5 2] [1.8 1] [GENE •] [3.5 2] [10 4] [F-INP ENT]
. .21 → 21. . → 21. .24 → 21.240.00

21.24000 MHz ⇒ 21.36000 MHz
Push [F-INP ENT] [GENE •] [7 3] [18 6] [F-INP ENT]
21. . → 21. .36 → 21.360.00

◇ Quick tuning step

Select mode   Main dial [TS]   [TS]

Quick tuning indicator   Quick tuning indicator
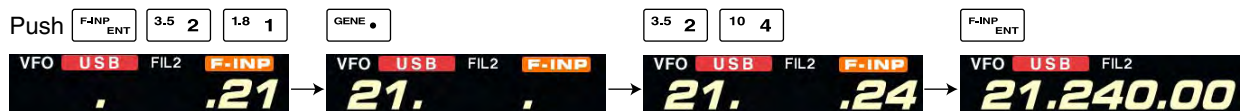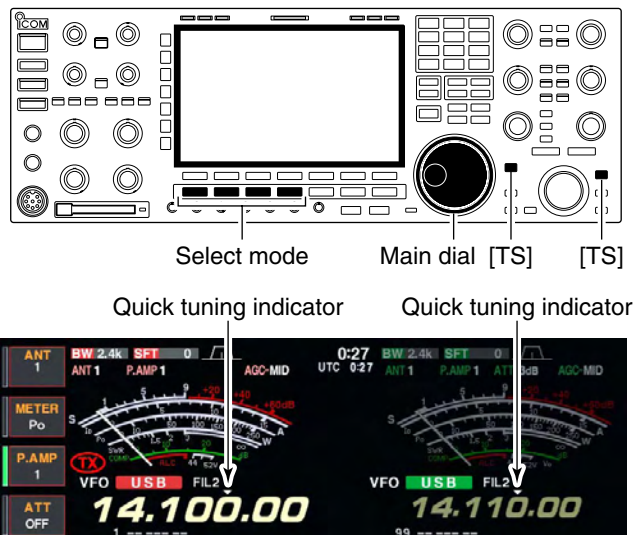
The operating frequency can be changed in kHz steps (0.1, 1, 5, 9, 10, 12.5, 20 or 25 kHz selectable) for quick tuning.

① Push [TS] to turn the quick tuning function ON.
  • "▼" appears when the quick tuning function ON.
② Rotate the main dial to change the frequency in pro-grammed kHz steps.
③ Push [TS] again to turn OFF the indicator.
④ Rotate the main dial for normal tuning if desired.

◇ Selecting "kHz" step

① Push [TS] to turn the quick tuning function ON and OFF.
  • "▼" appears when the quick tuning function ON.
② Push [TS] for 1 sec. to enter tuning step setting dis-play.
  • Selected tuning steps for all modes appear.
③ Select the desired operating mode.
④ Rotate the main dial to select the desired tuning step.
⑤ Repeat steps ③ and ④ to select quick tuning steps for other modes, if desired.
⑥ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit the setting display.

NOTE: When entering into quick tuning step set mode, the quick tuning function must be activated, and the set mode can be accessed from either band's quick tuning switch, [TS]. Therefore, use the same band's [TS] for quick tuning function selection and the set mode entering.

◇ ¼ tuning step function

¼ tuning step OFF   ¼ tuning step ON
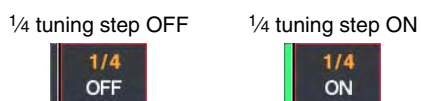
When operating in SSB data, CW, RTTY or PSK, the ¼ tuning function is available. Dial rotation is reduced to ¼ of normal when the ¼ tuning function is in use.

➥ Push [1/4] to toggle the ¼ tuning function ON and OFF.
  • "¼" appears when the ¼ tuning function ON

◇ Selecting 1 Hz step

1Hz step indicator   1Hz step indicator

The minimum tuning step of 1 Hz can be used for fine tuning.

① Push [TS] to turn the quick tuning function OFF.
② Push [TS] for 1 sec. to turn the 1 Hz tuning step ON and OFF.

⁄⁄ **NOTE:** 1 Hz tuning step activates for both main and ⁄⁄ sub bands simultaneously. Therefore, either [TS] ⁄⁄ can be used for the 1 Hz tuning step selection.

◇ Auto tuning step function

[F-1•▲][F-2•▼]   [EXIT/SET] [F-7•SET]

[F5•OTHERS]
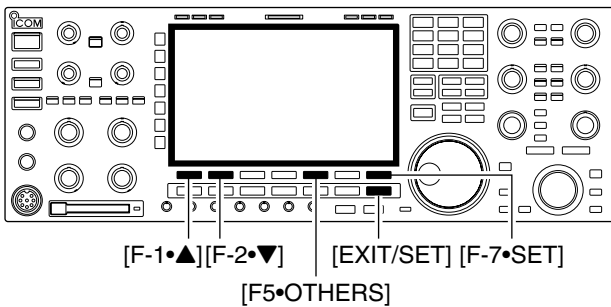
When rotating main or sub dial rapidly, the tuning speed accelerated automatically as selected.

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Push [F-7•SET] to select set mode menu screen.
  • Pushing and holding [EXIT/SET] for 1 sec. also selects set mode menu screen.
③ Push [F-5•OTHERS] to enter miscellaneous (others) set mode.
④ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select "MAIN DIAL Auto TS" or "SUB DIAL Auto TS."
  • "MAIN DIAL Auto TS" for main dial, "SUB DIAL Auto TS" for sub dial selection.
⑤ Rotate main dial to select the desired condition from high, low and OFF.
  • High : Approx. 5 times faster
  • Low : Approx. twice faster
  • OFF : Auto tuning step is turned OFF.
⑥ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit the set mode.

◇ Band edge warning beep
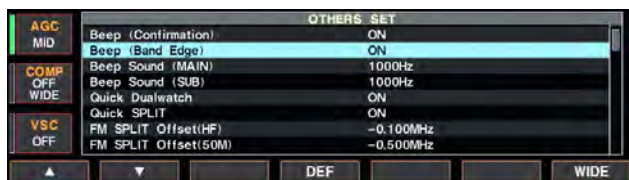
When selecting a frequency, that lies outside of a band's specified frequency range, a warning beep sounds.
This function can be turned OFF in set mode, if desired.

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Push [F-7•SET] to select set mode menu screen.
  • Pushing and holding [EXIT/SET] for 1 sec. also selects set mode menu screen.
③ Push [F5•OTHERS] to enter miscellaneous (others) set mode.
④ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select "Beep (Band Edge)."
⑤ Rotate main dial to turn the band edge warning beep ON and OFF.
⑥ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit the set mode.

■ Operating mode selection
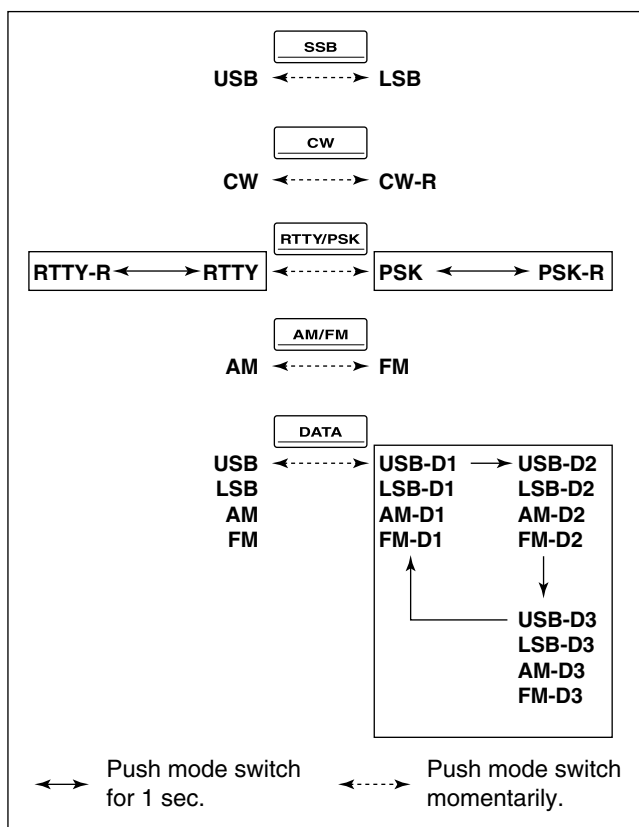
SSB (USB/LSB), SSB data (USB data/LSB data), CW, CW reverse (CW-R), RTTY, RTTY reverse (RTTY-R), PSK, PSK reverse (PSK-R), AM, AM data, FM and FM data modes are available in the IC-7800. Select the desired operation mode as follows.

To select a mode of operation, push the desired mode switch momentarily. Push the switch again to toggle between USB and LSB, CW and CW-R, RTTY/RTTY-R and PSK/PSK-R, AM and FM, if necessary. Push the switch for 1 sec. to toggle between RTTY and RTTY-R, PSK and PSK-R, if necessary.
See the diagram below left for the order of selection.

〰️ Microphone signals are muted when data mode is selected.

• Selecting SSB mode
➡ Push [SSB] to select USB or LSB.
  • USB is selected first when above 10 MHz; or LSB is selected first when below 10 MHz operation.
    (USB is selected when 5 MHz band is selected for the USA version.)
  • After USB or LSB is selected, push [SSB] to toggle between USB and LSB.

• Selecting CW mode
➡ Push [CW] to select CW.
  • After CW is selected, push [CW] to toggle between CW and CW reverse mode.

• Selecting RTTY/PSK mode
➡ Push [RTTY/PSK] to select RTTY or PSK.
  • After RTTY or PSK is selected, push [RTTY/PSK] to toggle between RTTY and PSK.
  • After RTTY or PSK is selected, push [RTTY/PSK] for 1 sec. to toggle between RTTY and RTTY reverse, or, PSK and PSK reverse mode, respectively.

• Selecting AM/FM mode
➡ Push [AM/FM] to select AM or FM.
  • After AM or FM is selected, push [AM/FM] to toggle between AM and FM.

• Selecting DATA mode
➡ After USB, LSB, AM, synchronous AM or FM is selected, push [DATA] to select USB data, LSB data, AM data, synchronous AM data or FM data mode, respectively.
  • After data mode is selected, push [DATA] to toggle between regular voice and data mode.
  • After data mode is selected, push [DATA] for 1 sec. to select data 1, 2 and 3 in sequence.

[SSB] [CW] [RTTY/PSK] [AM/FM] [DATA]

```
          ┌──────┐
          │ SSB  │
          └──────┘
    USB ◄┄┄┄┄┄► LSB

          ┌──────┐
          │  CW  │
          └──────┘
    CW  ◄┄┄┄┄┄► CW-R

          ┌──────────┐
          │ RTTY/PSK │
          └──────────┘
RTTY-R ◄────► RTTY ◄┄┄┄┄┄► PSK ◄────► PSK-R

          ┌──────────┐
          │  AM/FM   │
          └──────────┘
    AM  ◄┄┄┄┄┄► FM

          ┌──────┐
          │ DATA │
          └──────┘
    USB ◄┄┄┄┄┄► USB-D1 ──► USB-D2
    LSB           LSB-D1      LSB-D2
    AM            AM-D1       AM-D2
    FM            FM-D1       FM-D2
                                │
                                ▼
                            USB-D3
                            LSB-D3
                            AM-D3
                            FM-D3

◄────►  Push mode switch      ◄┄┄┄►  Push mode switch
        for 1 sec.                   momentarily.
```

■ Volume setting

[AF] for main   [AF] for sub

Audio output increases
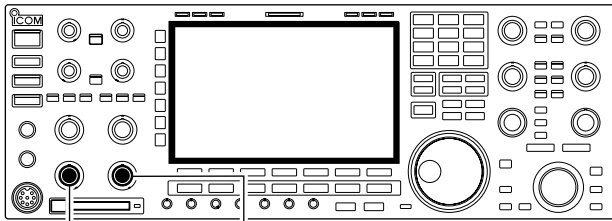
Audio output decreases

➡ Rotate [AF] control clockwise to increase; counter-clockwise to decrease the audio output level.
  • Set a suitable audio level.
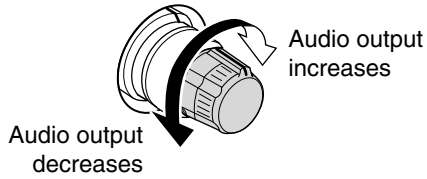
■ RF gain adjustment

[RF] for main   [RF] for sub

Sensitivity increases
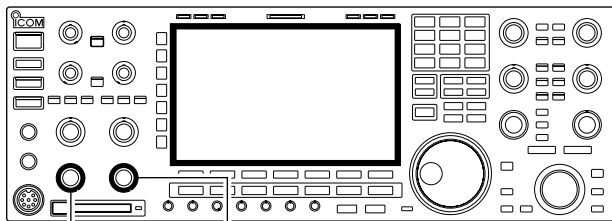
Sensitivity decreases

➡ Rotate [RF] control clockwise to increase; counter-clockwise to decrease the receiver sensitivity.
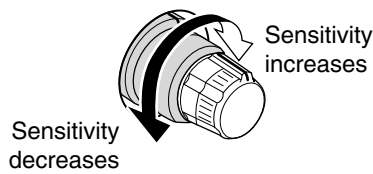
■ Squelch level adjustment
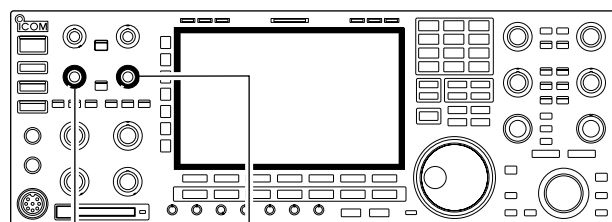
[SQL] for main   [SQL] for sub

Noise squelch (Recommended level; FM mode only)

S-meter squelch

Squelch is open

The squelch removes noise output from the speaker (closed position) when no signal is received.

➡ When no signal is received, rotate [SQL] control fully counterclockwise first, then rotate [SQL] clockwise to the point that the noise just disappears.
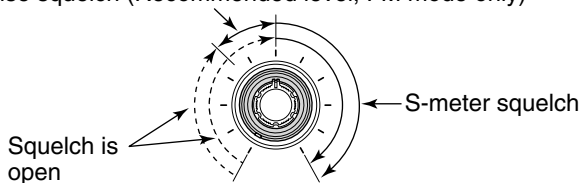
■ Meter indication selection

[METER]

Signal strength level readout

ID readout

Power level readout

VSWR readout

Compression level readout

ALC level readout

VD readout
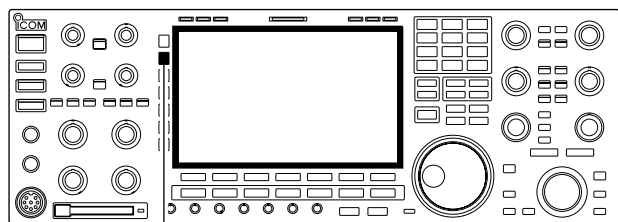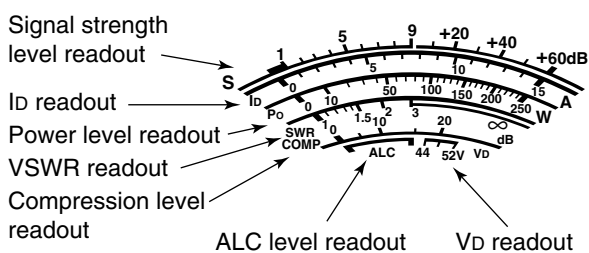
The S/RF meter indication, during transmit, can be selected from the following items as your desired.

➡ Push [METER] several times to select the desired item.

METER Po	Indicates the relative RF output power in watts.
METER SWR	Indicates the VSWR over the transmission line.
METER ALC	Indicates the ALC level. The ALC circuit begins to activate when the RF output power reaches a preset level.
METER COMP	Indicates the compression level when the speech compressor is in use.
METER ID	Indicates the drain's current of the final FETs.
METER VD	Indicates the drain's terminal voltage of the final FETs.

◇ Multi-function digital meter

"P-HOLD" indicator

The IC-7800 can display the multi-function digital meter in the LCD display, which displays all transmit meters simultaneously.
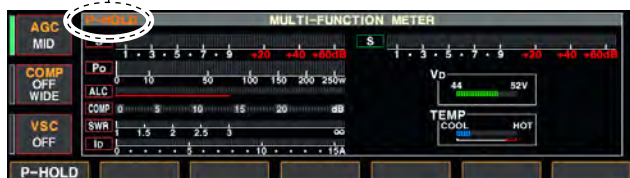
① Push [METER] for 1 sec. to turn the multi-function digital meter ON.
② Push [F-1•P-HOLD] to toggle the peak level hold function ON.
  • "P-HOLD" appears on the window title when the peak level hold function is turned ON.
③ Push [METER] for 1 sec., or push [EXIT/SET] to turn the multi-function digital meter OFF.

◇ Meter type selection

[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼]   [F-7•SET] [EXIT/SET]
        [F-3•DISPLAY]

• **Edgewise meter**
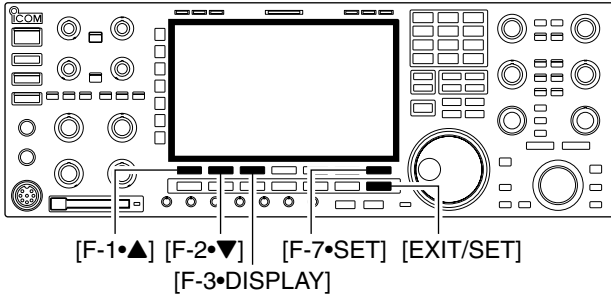
• **Bar meter**

Total of 3 meter types are available in the IC-7800—
Standard, Edgewise and Bar meters.
Follow the instructions below for the meter type selection.

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to return to normal
   screen, if necessary.
② Push [F-7•SET], then push [F-3•DISPLAY] to select
   display set mode.
③ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select "Meter type (Normal Screen)" item.
④ Rotate main dial to select the desired meter type
   from "Standard," "Edgewise" and "Bar."
⑤ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit display set mode.

■ Basic transmit operation

Before transmitting, monitor your selected operating frequency to make sure transmitting won't cause interference to other stations on the same frequency. It's good Amateur practice to listen first, and then, even if nothing is heard, ask "is the frequency in use" once or twice, before you being operating on that frequency.

◇ Transmitting
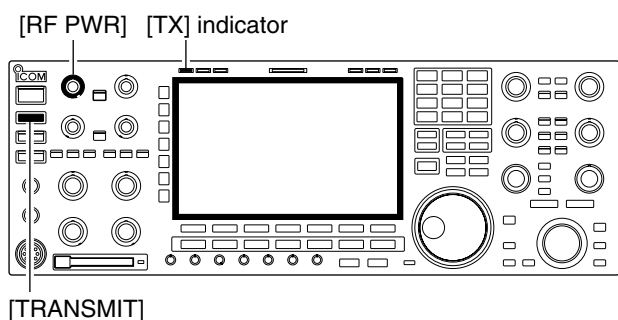
[RF PWR]   [TX] indicator

[TRANSMIT]

Before transmitting, monitor your selected operating frequency to make sure transmitting won't cause interference to other stations on the same frequency.

①Push [TRANSMIT] or [PTT] (microphone) to transmit.
- The main band's [TX] indicator lights red.
- When the split operation is activated, the sub band's [TX] indicator lights.

②Push [TRANSMIT] again or release [PTT] (microphone) to return to receive.

✔ *Adjusting the transmit output power*
➥ Rotate [RF PWR].
- Adjustable range   : 5 W to 200 W
                           (AM mode: 5 W to 50 W)
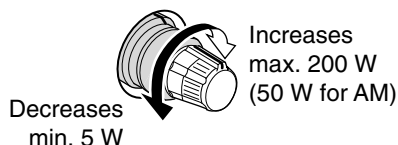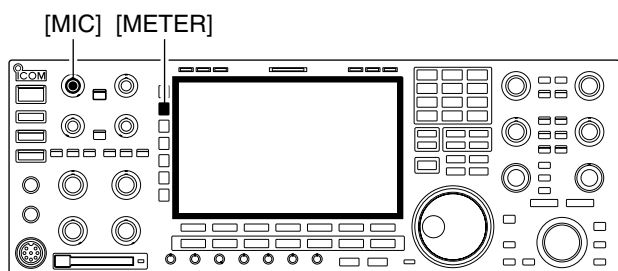
Increases
max. 200 W
(50 W for AM)

Decreases
min. 5 W

◇ Microphone gain adjustment

[MIC]   [METER]

Before transmitting, monitor your selected operating frequency to make sure transmitting won't cause interference to other stations on the same frequency.

①Push [METER] to select the ALC meter.
②Push [PTT] (microphone) to transmit.
- Talk into the microphone at your normal voice level.
③While talking into the microphone, rotate [MIC] so that the ALC meter reading doesn't go outside the ALC zone. (see at left)
④ Release [PTT] (microphone) to return to receive.

ALC zone

S   1   5   9   +20   +40   +60dB
ID   Po   SWR   COMP   ALC   44   52V   VD   W   A   dB

◇ Drive gain adjustment

[METER] [DRIVE]

Drive gain range
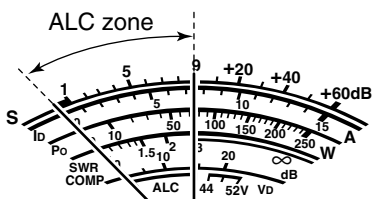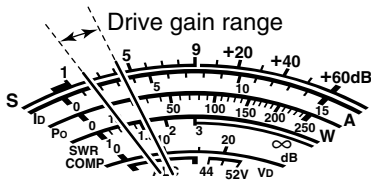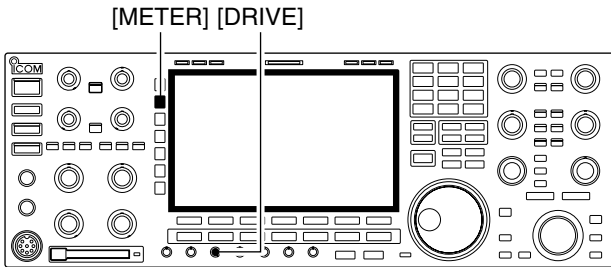
The drive gain can be activated for the all modes except SSB without speech compressor to adjust the amplifying gain at the drive stage.

Before transmitting, monitor your selected operating frequency to make sure transmitting won't cause interference to other stations on the same frequency.

①Push [METER] to select the ALC meter.
②Push [PTT] (microphone; SSB with [COMP] ON, AM or FM), key down (CW) or push [TRANSMIT] (RTTY or PSK) to transmit.
③While talking into the microphone, keying down or transmitting, rotate [DRIVE] so that the ALC meter reading swinging within 30 to 50% of the ALC scale. (see left)
  • Talk into the microphone at your normal voice level.
④Release [PTT], stop keying or push [TRANSMIT] again to return to receive.

RECEIVE AND TRANSMIT　　Section　4

■ Operating SSB

[MIC] [TX] indicator [RX] indicator Band keys

[TRANSMIT] [AF] [SSB]   Main dial

Appears

ANT
1

METER
Po

P.AMP
1

ATT
OFF

BW 2.4k SFT   0

ANT 1   P.AMP 1   AGC-MID

VFO USB FIL2

14.100.00

① Push a band key to select the desired band.
② Push [SSB] to select LSB or USB.
   • "USB" or "LSB" appears.
   • Below 10 MHz LSB is automatically selected; above 10 MHz USB is automatically selected.
③ Rotate the main dial to tune a desired signal.
   • The S-meter indicates received signal strength when signal is received.
④ Rotate [AF] to set audio to a comfortable listening level.
⑤ Push [TRANSMIT] or [PTT] (microphone) to transmit.
   • The TX indicator lights red.
⑥ Speak into the microphone at your normal voice level.
   • Adjust the microphone gain with [MIC] at this step, if necessary.
⑦ Push [TRANSMIT] or release [PTT] (microphone) to return to receive.

◇ Convenient functions for receive

• **Preamp** (p. 5-9)
➡ Push [P.AMP] several times to set the preamp OFF, preamp 1 ON or preamp 2 ON.
   • "P.AMP1" or "P.AMP2" appears when the preamp 1 or preamp 2 is set to ON, respectively. (depending on operating frequency band)

• **Attenuator** (p. 5-9)
➡ Push [ATT] several times to set the attenuator in 6 dB steps.
   • Pushing [P.AMP] for 1 sec. to set the attenuator in 3 dB steps.
   • "ATT" and attenuation level appear when the attenuator is set to ON.

• **Noise blanker** (p. 5-17)
➡ Push [NB] switch to turn the noise blanker ON and OFF, and then rotate [NB] control to adjust the threshold level.
   • Noise blanker indicator (above [NB] switch) lights when the noise blanker is set to ON.
   • Push [NB] for 1 sec. to enter noise blanker set mode.

• **Twin PBT (passband tuning)** (p. 5-12)
➡ Rotate [TWIN PBT] controls (inner/outer).
   • Push [PBT CLEAR] to clear the settings.

• **Audio tone control** (p. 12-4)
➡ Push [F-7•SET] then [F-1•LEVEL] to enter level set mode. Select an item with [F-1•▲]/[F-2•▼] then rotate the main dial to adjust the audio tone.

• **Noise reduction** (p. 5-18)
➡ Push [NR] switch to turn the noise reduction ON and OFF.
   • Rotate [NR] control to adjust the noise reduction level.
   • Noise reduction indicator (above [NR] switch) lights when the noise reduction is set to ON.

• **Auto notch filter** (p. 5-19)
➡ Push [NOTCH] switch to turn the auto or manual notch function ON and OFF.
   • Rotate [NOTCH] control to set the attenuating frequency for manual notch operation.
   • Notch indicator (above [NOTCH] switch) lights when either the auto or manual notch is set to ON.

• **AGC (auto gain control)** (p. 5-11)
➡ Push [AGC] switch several times to select AGC FAST, AGC MID or AGC SLOW.
➡ Push [AGC VR] to turn the AGC time constant manual setting ON and OFF.
   • Rotate [AGC] control to adjust the time constant.

• **VSC (voice squelch control)** (p. 9-3)
➡ Push [VSC] to turn the VSC function ON and OFF.
   • The VSC indicator appears when the voice squelch function is set to ON.

◇ **Convenient functions for transmit**

• **Speech compressor** (p. 6-5)
➥ Push [COMP] to turn the speech compressor ON and OFF.
   • Pushing [COMP] for 1 sec. to select the compression bandwidth from wide, middle and narrow.

• **VOX (voice operated transmit)** (p. 6-2)
➥ Push [VOX/BK-IN] to turn the VOX function ON and OFF.
   • "VOX" appears when the VOX function is set to ON.

• **Transmit quality monitor** (p. 6-4)
➥ Push [MONI] to turn the monitor function ON and OFF.
   • Rotate [MONI GAIN] to adjust the monitor gain.
   • Monitor indicator (above [MONI] switch) lights when the monitor function is set to ON.

• **Audio tone control** (p. 12-4)
➥ Push [F-7•SET] then [F-1•LEVEL] to enter level set mode. Select an item with [F-1•▲]/[F-2•▼] then rotate the main dial to adjust the audio tone.

◇ **About 5 MHz band operation (USA version only)**

Operation on the 5 MHz band is allowed on 5 discrete frequencies and must adhere to the following:

• USB mode
• Maximum of 50 watts ERP (Effective Radiated Power)
• 2.8 kHz bandwidth

It is the operator's responsibility to set all controls so that the transmission in this band meets the stringent conditions under which we may use these frequencies.

NOTE: We recommend that you store these frequencies, mode and filter settings into the memory channel for easy recall.

*The channel center frequencies that are specified by the FCC, show the center frequency of their passband. However, the IC-7800 displays carrier point frequency, so set 1.5 kHz below from FCC channel center frequency.

IC-7800 Tuning Frequency*	FCC Channel Center Frequency*
5.33050 MHz	5.33200 MHz
5.34650 MHz	5.34800 MHz
5.36650 MHz	5.36800 MHz
5.37150 MHz	5.37300 MHz
5.40350 MHz	5.40500 MHz

To assist you in operating the 5 MHz band correctly within the rules specified by the FCC, transmission is impossible on any 5 MHz band frequency other than the 5 frequencies indicated in the table above.

■ Operating CW

[TX] indicator

[KEY SPEED]   [RX] indicator   Band keys

[TRANSMIT] [AF]   [CW]   Main dial
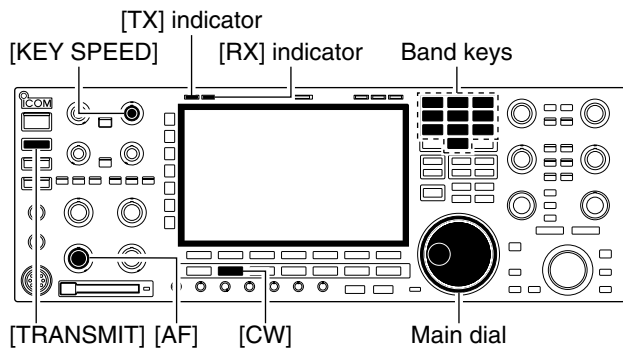
Appears

① Push a band key to select the desired band.
② Push [CW] to select CW.
　• After CW mode is selected, push [CW] to toggle between CW and CW-R modes.
　• "CW" or "CW-R" appears.
③ Rotate the main dial to simultaneously tune a desired signal and its side tone.
　• The S-meter indicates received signal strength when signal is received.
④ Rotate [AF] to set audio to a comfortable listening level.
⑤ Push [TRANSMIT] to transmit.
　• [TX] indicator lights red.
⑥ Use the electric keyer or paddle to key your CW signals.
　• The power meter indicates transmitted CW output power.
⑦ Adjust CW speed with [KEY SPEED].
　• Adjustable within 6–60 WPM.
⑧ Push [TRANSMIT] to return to receive.

◇ Convenient functions for receive

• **Preamp** (p. 5-9)
➥ Push [P.AMP] several times to set the preamp OFF, preamp 1 ON or preamp 2 ON.
　• "P.AMP1" or "P.AMP2" appears when the preamp 1 or preamp 2 is set to ON, respectively. (depending on operating frequency band)

• **Attenuator** (p. 5-9)
➥ Push [ATT] several times to set the attenuator in 6 dB steps.
　• Pushing [P.AMP] for 1 sec. to set the attenuator in 3 dB steps.
　• "ATT" and attenuation level appear when the attenuator is set to ON.

• **Noise blanker** (p. 5-14)
➥ Push [NB] switch to turn the noise blanker ON and OFF, and then rotate [NB] control to adjust the threshold level.
　• Noise blanker indicator (above [NB] switch) lights when the noise blanker is set to ON.
　• Push [NB] for 1 sec. to enter noise blanker set mode.

• **Noise reduction** (p. 5-18)
➥ Push [NR] switch to turn the noise reduction ON and OFF.
　• Rotate [NR] control to adjust the noise reduction level.
　• Noise reduction indicator (above [NR] switch) lights when the noise reduction is set to ON.

• **Twin PBT (passband tuning)** (p. 5-12)
➥ Rotate [TWIN PBT] controls (inner/outer).
　• Push [PBT CLEAR] to clear the settings.

• **Auto notch filter** (p. 5-19)
➥ Push [NOTCH] switch to turn the manual notch function ON and OFF.
　• Rotate [NOTCH] control to set the attenuating frequency.
　• Notch indicator (above [NOTCH] switch) lights when either the manual notch is set to ON.

• **AGC (auto gain control)** (p. 5-11)
➥ Push [AGC] switch several times to select AGC FAST, AGC MID or AGC SLOW.
➥ Push [AGC VR] to turn the AGC time constant manual setting ON and OFF.
　• Rotate [AGC] control to adjust the time constant.

• **¼ function** (p. 3-6)
➥ Push [1/4] to turn the ¼ function ON and OFF.

• **Auto tuning function** (p. 1-9)
➥ Push [AUTO TUNE] to turn the auto tuning function ON and OFF.
　• The transceiver automatically tuned into the desired signal within ±500 kHz range.
　IMPORTANT!
　When receiving a weak signal, or receiving a signal with interference, the automatic tuning function may not be tuned, or tuned into an undesired signal.

◇ Convenient functions for transmit

• **Break-in function** (p. 6-3)
➥ Push [VOX/BK-IN] several times to select the break-in OFF, semi break-in and full break-in.
   • "BK IN" or "F-BK IN" appears when the semi break-in or full break-in function is set to ON, respectively.

◇ About CW reverse mode

Push
cw

BFO
Interference Desired signal

CW mode (LSB side)

BFO
Interference Desired signal

CW-R mode (USB side)
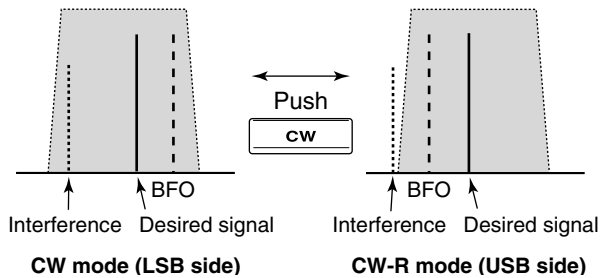
CW-R (CW Reverse) mode receives CW signals with a reverse side CW carrier point like that of LSB and USB modes.

Use when interfering signals are near a desired signal and you want to change the interference tone.

➥ During CW mode, push [CW] to select CW and CW-R mode.

◇ About CW pitch control
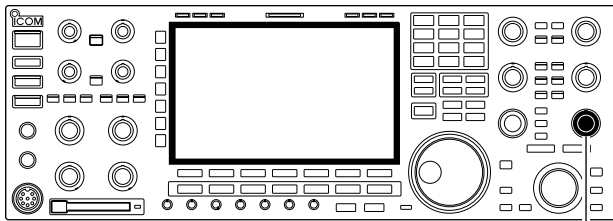
[CW PITCH]

The received CW audio pitch and monitored CW audio can be adjusted to suit your preference (300 to 900 Hz in 25 Hz steps) without changing the operating frequency.

➥ Rotate [CW PITCH] to suit your preference.
   • Adjustable within 300 to 900 Hz in 25 Hz steps.

◇ CW side tone function
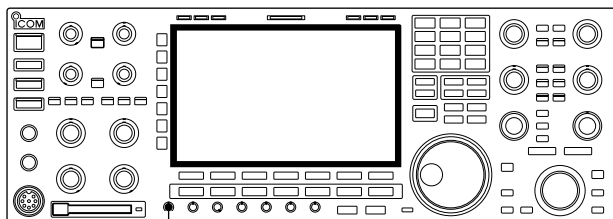
[MONI GAIN]

When the transceiver is in the receive condition (and the break-in function is OFF— p. 6-3) you can listen to the tone of your CW signal without actually transmitting.

This allows you to match your transmit signal exactly to another station's. This also convenient for CW practice. CW side tone level can be adjusted with [MONI GAIN].

◇ APF (Audio Peak Filter) operation

[APF/TPF] [APF/TPF]
(MAIN) (SUB)

[DIGI-SEL] [DIGI-SEL]
(MAIN) (SUB)
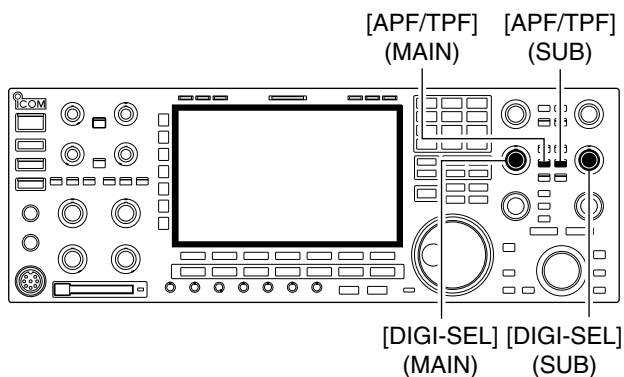
The APF changes the receive frequency response by boosting up a particular frequency to pick up a desired CW signal.

The peak frequency can be adjusted with [DIGI-SEL] control when "APF" is selected for "DIGI-SEL VR Operation" in miscellaneous (others) set mode (p. 12-17).

① During CW mode, push [APF/TPF] to turn the audio peak filter ON and OFF.
  • "APF" appears in the display and [APF/TPF] indicator above this switch lights green.
② Push [APF/TPF] for 1 sec. several times to select the desired audio filter width.
  • 320, 160 and 80 Hz filters are available.
③ If "APF" is selected for "DIGI-SEL VR Operation," rotate [DIGI-SEL] control to suit your preference.

◇ About 137 kHz band operation (Europe, UK, Italy, Spain, France versions only)

137 kHz band, within 135.7 kHz to 137.8 kHz range, operation in CW mode is optionally available with the IC-7800.

The RF signal from [X-VERTER] is used for the 137 kHz band operation, and an external amplifier unit is necessary.

See the connection diagram below for reference.

• **Connection diagram for 137 kHz band operation**

Power amplifier with T/R switching unit for 137 kHz

to [X-VERTER]

PA

BPF or LPF

to [ACC2] pin 6*

to [RELAY] (for transmit/receive control)

*Transverter ON/OFF control signal related to the power amplifier unit main power, if desired.
• ON: 2–13.8 V DC input (more than 10 kΩ impedance)
• OFF: Less than 2 V DC
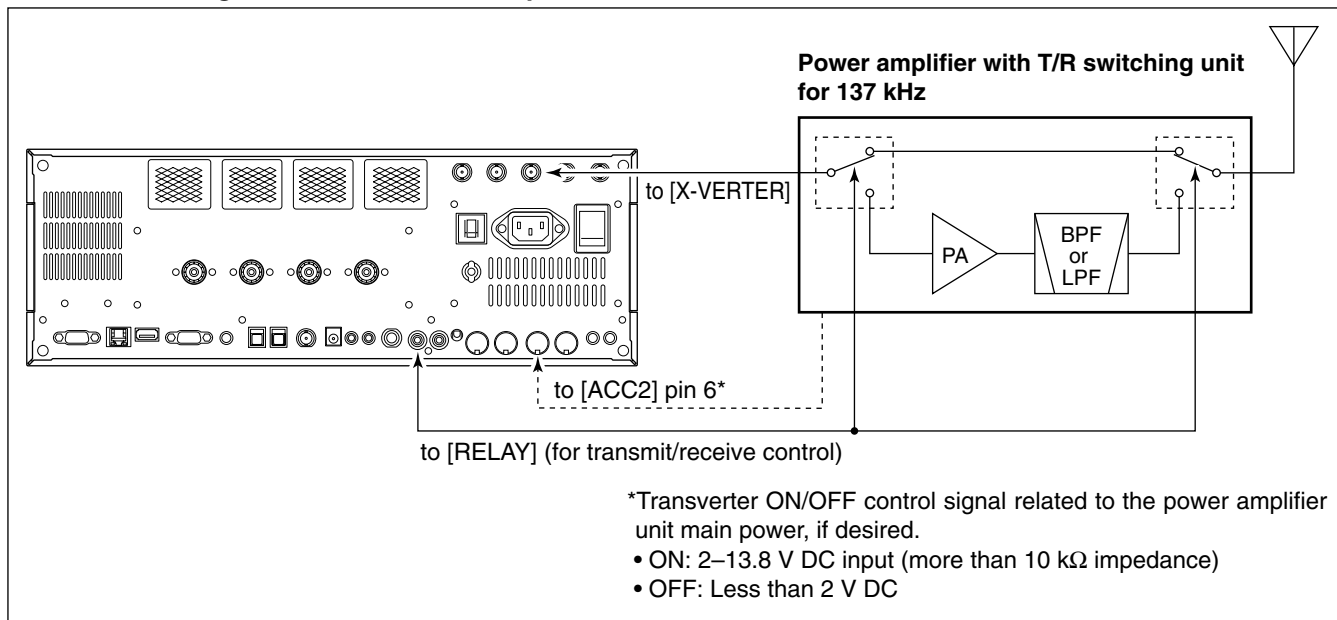
■ Electronic keyer functions

[F-1]–[F-4] [CW] [EXIT/SET]
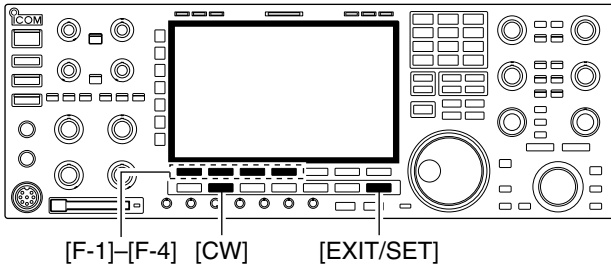
The IC-7800 has a number of convenient functions for the electronic keyer that can be accessed from the memory keyer menu.

① During CW mode, push [EXIT/SET] several times to normal screen, if necessary.
② Push [F-3•KEYER] to select memory keyer screen.
③ Push [EXIT/SET] to select memory keyer menu screen.
④ Push one of the multi-function keys ([F-1] to [F-4]) to select the desired menu. See the diagram below.
  • Push [EXIT/SET] to return to the previous indication.

• **Memory keyer screen** (p. 4-8)

• **Memory keyer edit screen** (p. 4-9)

• **Memory keyer menu screen**
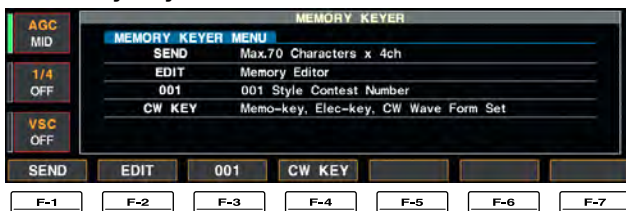
• **Contest number set mode** (p. 4-10)

• **Keyer set mode screen** (p. 4-11)

◇ Memory keyer screen

[TRANSMIT]   [CW]   [EXIT/SET] [F-1•M1]–[F-5•–1]
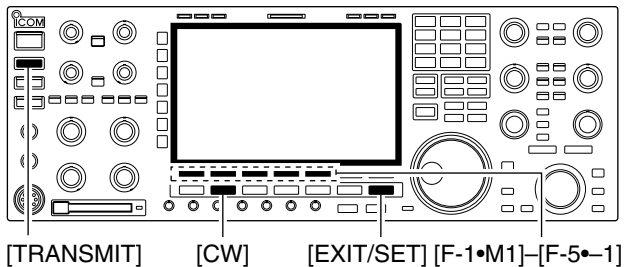
• Memory keyer screen

Pre-set characters can be sent using the keyer send menu. Contents of the memory keyer are set using the edit menu.

• Transmitting

① During CW mode operation, push [F-3•KEYER] to select memory keyer screen.

② Push [TRANSMIT] to set the transceiver to transmit, or set the break-in function ON (p. 6-3).

③ Push one of the function keys ([F-1•M1] to [F-4•M4]) to send the contents of the memory keyer.
   • Pushing a function key for 1 sec. repeatedly sends the contents; push any function key to cancel the transmission.
   • The contest number counter, above [F-5•–1], is incremented each time the contents are sent.
   • Push [F-5•–1] to reduce the contest number count by 1 when resending contents to unanswered calls.

For your information
When an external keypad is connected to [EXT KEYPAD] connector on the rear panel, the programmed contents, M1—M4, can be transmitted without selecting the memory keyer screen.
See p. 2-6 for details.

④ Push [EXIT/SET] twice to return to normal screen.

◇ Editing a memory keyer

The contents of the memory keyer memories can be set using the memory keyer edit menu. The memory keyer can memorize and re-transmit 4 CW key codes for often-used CW sentences, contest numbers, etc. Total capacity of the memory keyer is 70 characters per memory channel.

[123]/[Symbol] [ABC][F-3•DEL] [F-4•SPACE]

[F-1•◄] [F-2•►]   [EXIT/SET] [F-7•M1..M4]
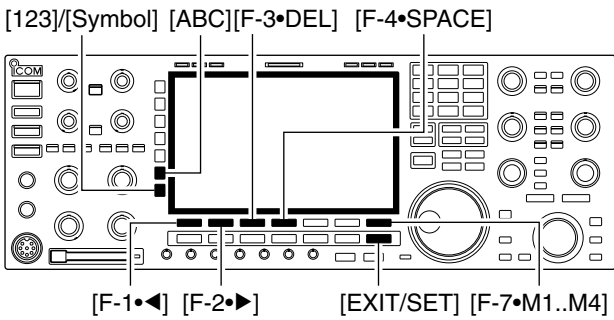
• Memory keyer edit screen
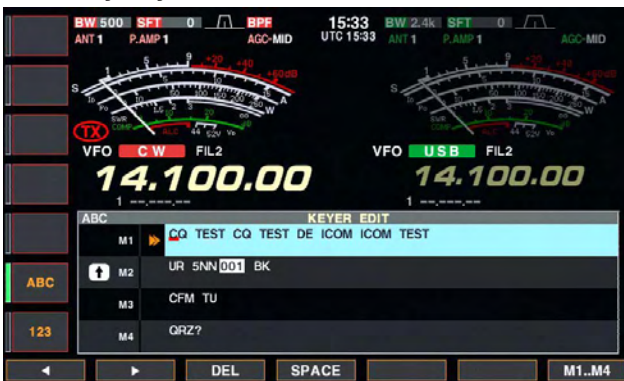
• Example— entered "QSL TU DE JA3YUA TEST" into memory keyer channel 3

• Pre-programmed contents

CH	Contents
M1	CQ TEST CQ TEST DE ICOM ICOM TEST
M2	UR 5NN✱ BK
M3	CFM TU
M4	QRZ?

• Programming contents

① During CW mode operation, push [F-3•KEYER] to select memory keyer screen.

② Push [EXIT•SET] to select memory keyer menu, then push [F-2•EDIT] to select keyer edit screen.
   • Memory keyer contents of the Channel 1 (M1) is selected.

③ Push [F-7•M1..M4] several times to select the desired memory keyer channel to be edited.
   • Push [F5] to manually increment the contest number.

④ Push [ABC] or [123] or [Symbol] to select the character group, then rotate the main dial to select the character, or push the keypad for number input.
   • [Symbol] appears when [123] is pushed when "123" character group is selected.
   • Selectable characters (with the main dial);

Key selection	Editable characters
ABC	A to Z (capital letters)
123	0 to 9 (numbers)
Symbol	/ ? ^ . , ✱

NOTE:
"^" is used to transmit a following word with no space such as AR. Put "^" before a text string such as ^AR, and the string "$\overline{AR}$" is sent with no space.
"✱" is used to insert the CW contest number. The contest number automatically increments by 1. This function is only available for one memory keyer channel at a time. Memory keyer channel M2 used "✱" by default.

✔ For your convenience
When a PC keyboard is connected to [KEYBOARD] connector on the rear panel, the memory keyer contents can also be edited from the keyboard.

⑤ Push [F-1•◄] or [F-2•►] to move the cursor backwards or forwards, respectively.
   • Pushing [F-3•DEL] deletes a character and [F-4•SPACE] inserts a space.

⑥ Repeat steps ④ and ⑤ to input the desired characters.

⑦ Push [EXIT/SET] twice to return normal screen.

◇ Contest number set mode

[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼][F-4•DEF] [EXIT/SET]   Main dial

• **Contest number set mode screen**
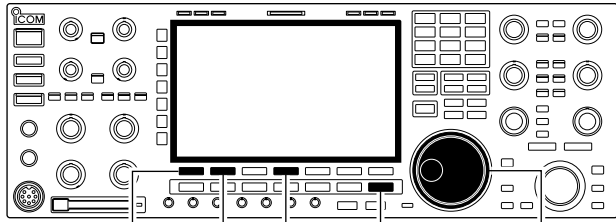
This menu is used to set the contest (serial) number and count up trigger, etc.

• **Setting contents**

① During CW mode operation, push [F-3•KEYER] to select memory keyer screen.
② Push [EXIT•SET] to select memory keyer menu, then push [F-3•001] to select contest number set mode.
③ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired set item.
④ Set the desired condition using the main dial.
  • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default condition or value.
⑤ Push [EXIT/SET] twice to normal screen.

Number Style	Normal
This item sets the numbering system used for contest (serial) numbers— normal or morse cut numbers.	• Normal : Does not use morse cut number (default) • 190➔ANO : Sets 1 as A, 9 as N and 0 as O. • 190➔ANT : Sets 1 as A, 9 as N and 0 as T. • 90➔ NO : Sets 9 as N and 0 as O. • 90➔ NT : Sets 9 as N and 0 as T.

Count Up Trigger	M2
This selects which of the four memory slots will have the contest serial number exchange. The count up trigger allows the serial number automatically incremented after each complete serial number exchange is sent.	• M1, M2, M3 and M4 can be set. (default: M2)

Present Number	001
This item shows the current number for the count up trigger channel set above.	• Rotate the main dial to change the number, or push [F-3•001CLR] for 1 sec. to reset the current number to 001.

◇ Keyer set mode

This set mode is used to set the CW side tone, memory keyer repeat time, dash weight, paddle specifications, keyer type, etc.

• Setting contents

① During CW mode operation, push [F-3•KEYER] to select memory keyer screen.
② Push [EXIT•SET] to select memory keyer menu, then push [F-4•CW KEY] to select keyer set mode.
③ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired set item.
④ Set the desired condition using the main dial.
　• Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default condition or value.
⑤ Push [EXIT/SET] twice to normal screen.

[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼][F-4•DEF] [EXIT/SET]　Main dial
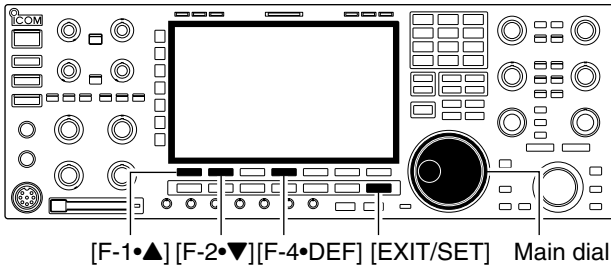
• Keyer set mode screen

Keyer Repeat Time　　　　2s

When sending CW using the repeat timer, this item sets the time between transmission.

• 1 to 60 sec. in 1 sec. steps can be selected. (default: 2 sec.)

Dot/Dash Ratio　　　　1:1:3.0

This item sets the dot/dash ratio.

Keying weight example: Morse code "K"

• 1:1:2.8 to 1:1:4.5 (in 0.1 steps) can be selected. (default: 1:1:3.0)

*SPACE and DOT length can be adjusted with [KEY SPEED] only.

Rise Time　　　　4ms

This item sets the envelop time period which the output power becomes the set transmit power.

• 2, 4, 6 or 8 msec. can be selected. (default: 4 msec.)

• About rise time

◇ Keyer set mode (continued)

Paddle Polarity	Normal
This item sets the paddle polarity.	• Normal and reverse polarity can be selected.

Keyer Type	ELEC–KEY
This item selects the keyer type for [ELEC-KEY] connector on the front panel.	• ELEC-KEY, BUG-KEY and Straight key can be selected. (default: ELEC-KEY)

MIC Up/Down Keyer	OFF
This item allows you to set the microphone [UP]/[DN] keys to be used as a paddle.	• ON **:** [UP]/[DN] switches can be used for CW. • OFF **:** [UP]/[DN] switches cannot be used for CW. **NOTE:** When "ON" is selected, the frequency and memory channel cannot be changed using the [UP]/[DN] switches.

■ Operating RTTY (FSK)
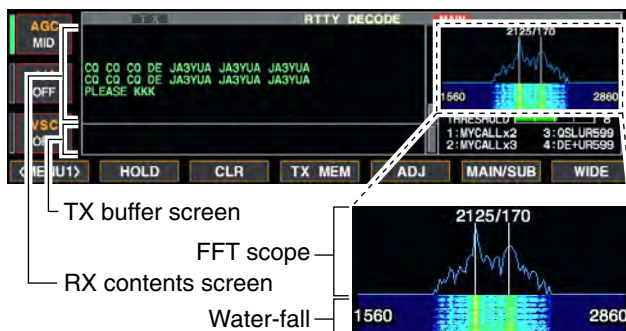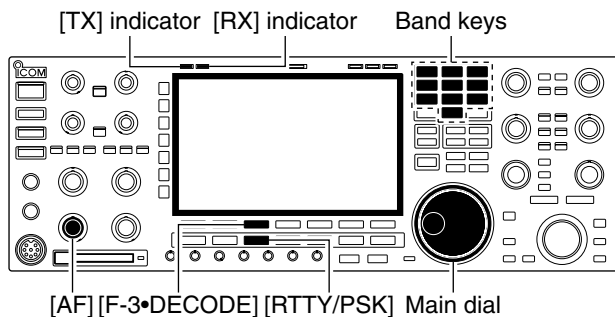
The Baudot RTTY encoder/decoder is built-in to the IC-7800. When connecting a PC keyboard (p. 2-6), RTTY operation can be performed without an external RTTY terminal, TNC, etc.

When using your RTTY terminal or TNC, consult the manual that comes with the RTTY terminal or TNC.

① Push a band key to select the desired band.
② Push [RTTY/PSK] to select RTTY.
   • After RTTY mode is selected, push [RTTY/PSK] for 1 sec. to toggle between RTTY and RTTY-R modes.
   • "RTTY" or "RTTY-R" appears.
③ Push [F-3•DECODE] to display the decoder screen.
   • The IC-7800 has a Baudot decoder.
④ To tune into the desired signal, make symmetrical wave form and ensure the waves peak points align with the mark (2125 Hz) and shift (170 Hz) frequency lines in the FFT scope with the main dial.
   • The S-meter indicates received signal strength when signal is received.
⑤ Rotate [AF] to set the audio to a comfortable listening level.
⑥ Press [F12] of the connected keyboard to transmit.
   • [TX] indicator lights red.
⑦ Type from the connected keyboard to enter the contents that you want to transmit.
   • The typewritten contents are indicated in the TX buffer screen and transmitted immediately.
   • The text color will be changed when transmitted.
   • Press one of [F1]–[F8] to transmit the TX memory contents.
⑧ Press [F12] of the keyboard to return to receive.

✔ For your convenience
The transmission contents can be typewritten before being transmitted.

① Perform the steps ① to ④ above.
② Type from the connected keyboard to enter the contents that you want to transmit.
   • The typewritten contents are indicated in the TX buffer screen.
③ Press [F12] of the connected keyboard to transmit the typewritten contents.
   • The color of displayed text, in the TX buffer screen, will be changed when transmitted.
   • To cancel the transmission, press [F12] twice.
④ Press [F12] of the keyboard to return to receive.

[TX] indicator [RX] indicator   Band keys

[AF] [F-3•DECODE] [RTTY/PSK] Main dial

Appears

TX buffer screen
FFT scope
RX contents screen
Water-fall

◇ Convenient functions for receive

• **Preamp** (p. 5-9)
➡ Push [P.AMP] several times to set the preamp OFF, preamp 1 ON or preamp 2 ON.
  • "P.AMP1" or "P.AMP2" appears when the preamp 1 or preamp 2 is set to ON, respectively. (depending on operating frequency band)

• **Attenuator** (p. 5-9)
➡ Push [ATT] several times to set the attenuator in 6 dB steps.
  • Pushing [P.AMP] for 1 sec. to set the attenuator in 3 dB steps.
  • "ATT" and attenuation level appear when the attenuator is set to ON.

• **Noise blanker** (p. 5-17)
➡ Push [NB] switch to turn the noise blanker ON and OFF, and then rotate [NB] control to adjust the threshold level.
  • Noise blanker indicator (above [NB] switch) lights when the noise blanker is set to ON.
  • Push [NB] for 1 sec. to enter noise blanker set mode.

• **Twin PBT (passband tuning)** (p. 5-12)
➡ Rotate [TWIN PBT] controls (inner/outer).
  • Push [PBT CLEAR] to clear the settings.

• **Noise reduction** (p. 5-18)
➡ Push [NR] switch to turn the noise reduction ON and OFF.
  • Rotate [NR] control to adjust the noise reduction level.
  • Noise reduction indicator (above [NR] switch) lights when the noise reduction is set to ON.

• **Auto notch filter** (p. 5-19)
➡ Push [NOTCH] switch to turn the manual notch function ON and OFF.
  • Rotate [NOTCH] control to set the attenuating frequency.
  • Notch indicator (above [NOTCH] switch) lights when either the manual notch is set to ON.

• **AGC (auto gain control)** (p. 5-11)
➡ Push [AGC] switch several times to select AGC FAST, AGC MID or AGC SLOW.
➡ Push [AGC VR] to turn the AGC time constant manual setting ON and OFF.
  • Rotate [AGC] control to adjust the time constant.

• **¼ function** (p. 3-6)
➡ Push [1/4] to turn the ¼ function ON and OFF.

◇ About RTTY reverse mode

Normal   Reverse

170 Hz 2125 Hz   2125 Hz 170 Hz

Space Mark BFO   BFO Space Mark
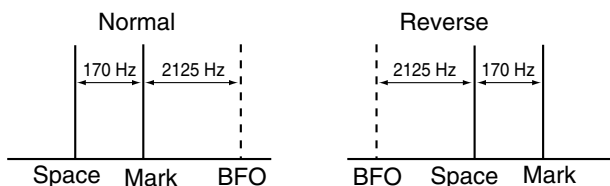
Received characters are occasionally garbled when the receive signal is reversed between MARK and Space. This reversal can be caused by incorrect TNC connections, setting, commands, etc. To receive reversed RTTY signals correctly, select RTTY-R mode.

➡ During RTTY mode, push [RTTY/PSK] for 1 sec. to select RTTY and RTTY-R mode.

◇ Twin peak filter

[APF/TPF] [APF/TPF]
(MAIN)   (SUB)
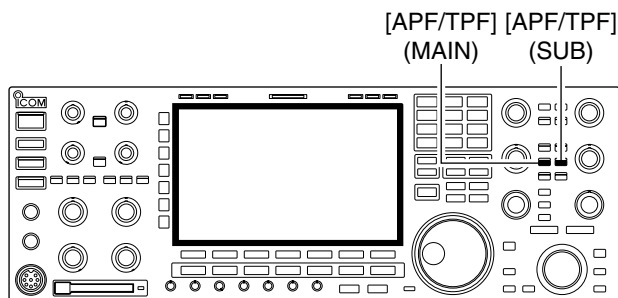
The twin peak filter changes receive frequency response by boosting 2 particular frequencies (2125 and 2295 Hz) for better copying of desired RTTY signals.

➡ During RTTY mode, push [APF/TPF] to turn the twin peak filter ON and OFF.
  • "TPF" appears in the LCD and the [APF/TPF] indicator above this switch lights green while the filter is in use.

NOTE: When the twin peak filter is in use, the received audio output may be increased. This is a normal transceiver performance to providing a better decoding, not a malfunction.

◇ Functions for the RTTY decoder indication
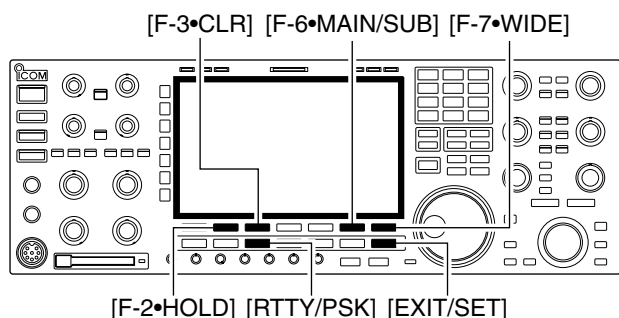
[F-3•CLR] [F-6•MAIN/SUB] [F-7•WIDE]

[F-2•HOLD] [RTTY/PSK] [EXIT/SET]

• Wide screen indication

◇ Setting the decoder threshold level

① Push a band key to select the desired band.
② Push [RTTY/PSK] to select RTTY.
  • After RTTY mode is selected, push [RTTY/PSK] for 1 sec. to toggle between RTTY and RTTY-R modes.
  • "RTTY" or "RTTY-R" appears.
③ Push [F-3•DECODE] to display the decoder screen.
  • When tuned into an RTTY signal, decoded characters are displayed in the RX contents screen.
④ Push [F-2•HOLD] to freeze the current screen.
  • " HOLD " appears while the function is in use.
  • Push [F-2•HOLD] again to release the function.
⑤ Push [F-3•CLR] for 1 sec. to clear the displayed characters.
  • " HOLD " indicator disappears at the same time when the hold function is in use.
⑥ Push [F-7•WIDE] to toggle the RTTY decode screen size from normal and wide.
  • S/RF meter type during wide screen indication can be selected in display set mode. (pgs. 3-11, 12-11)
⑦ Push [F-6•MAIN/SUB] to toggle the MAIN and SUB band for decode operation.
  • Dualwatch function (p. 5-16) should be ON when SUB band is selected for decode operation.
⑧ Push [EXIT/SET] to close the RTTY decode screen.

Adjust the RTTY decoder threshold level if some characters are displayed when no signal is received.

① Call up the RTTY decoder screen as described above.
② Push [F-5•ADJ] to select the threshold level setting condition.
③ Rotate the main dial to adjust the RTTY decoder threshold level.
  • Push [F-6•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default setting.
④ Push [F-5•ADJ] to exit from the threshold level setting condition.

The UnShift On Space (USOS) function and new line code can be set in the RTTY set mode. (p. 4-18)

◇ RTTY memory transmission

Pre-set characters can be sent using the RTTY memory. Contents of the memory are set using the edit menu.

① During RTTY mode operation, push [F-3•DECODE] to select RTTY decode screen.
② Push [F-4•TX MEM] to select RTTY memory screen.
③ Push [F-7•1–4/5–8] to select memory bank then push one of the function keys ([F-1•RT1] to [F-4•RT4] or [F-1•RT5] to [F-4•RT8]).
   • When no keyboard is connected, the selected memory contents will be transmitted immediately.
   • When a keyboard is connected, the memory contents will be transmitted immediately when function key is pushed, or transmitted after [F12] on the connected keyboard is pressed, depending on auto transmission/reception setting (see below).
   • The transmission date, time, reception date and/or time may be displayed in RX contents screen, depending on setting.

[F-1•RT1]–[F-4•RT4] [EXIT/SET] [F-7•1–4/5–8]
[F-1•RT5]–[F-4•RT8]

		RTTY MEMORY	
AGC MID	RT1 MYCALLx2	„DE ICOM ICOM K」	AUTO TX/RX
1/4 OFF	RT2 MYCALLx3	„DE ICOM ICOM ICOM K」	AUTO TX/RX
	RT3 QSLUR599	„QSL UR 599–599 BK」	AUTO TX/RX
VSC OFF	RT4 DE+UR599	„QSL DE ICOM ICOM UR 599–599 BK」	AUTO TX/RX
RT1	RT2	RT3 RT4	EDIT 1–4/5–8

◇ Automatic transmission/reception setting

① During RTTY mode operation, push [F-3•DECODE] to select RTTY decode screen.
② Push [F-4•TX MEM] to select RTTY memory screen, then push [F-6•EDIT] to select RTTY memory edit screen.
   • RTTY memory contents of the Channel 1 (RT1) is selected.
③ Push [F-7•RT1..RT8] several times to select the desired RTTY memory.
④ Push [F-6•AUTO TX] several times to select the desired condition as follow.
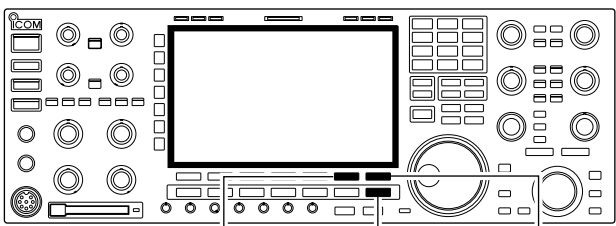
[F-6•AUTO TX] [EXIT/SET] [F-7•RT1..RT8]

		RTTY MEMORY EDIT	
ABC	RT1 ✦MYCALLx2	„DE ICOM ICOM K」	AUTO TX/RX
ABC	RT2 MYCALLx3	„DE ICOM ICOM ICOM K」	AUTO TX/RX
	RT3 QSLUR599	„QSL UR 599–599 BK」	AUTO TX/RX
123	RT4 DE+UR599	„QSL DE ICOM ICOM UR 599–599 BK」	AUTO TX/RX
◄	► DEL	SPACE ◄ ►	AUTO TX RT1..RT8

   • AUTO TX/RX : Automatically transmits the selected memory and returns to receive after the transmission.
   • AUTO TX : Automatically transmits the selected memory. To return to receive, press [F12] on the keyboard.
   • AUTO RX : Press [F12] on the keyboard to transmit the selected memory. Automatically returns to receive after the transmission.
   • No indication : Press [F12] on the keyboard to transmit the selected memory and press [F12] again to return to receive.
⑤ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit RTTY memory edit condition.

NOTE: The transceiver always functions as the "AUTO TX/RX" setting when no keyboard is connected.

◇ Editing RTTY memory

[123]/[Symbol] [ABC]/[abc] [F-3•DEL] [F-4•SPACE]
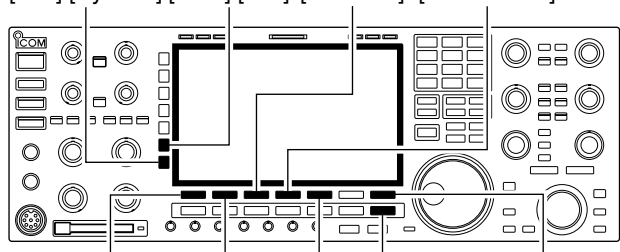
[F-1•◀] [F-2•▶] [F-5•◀▶][EXIT/SET][F-7•RT1..RT8]

• RTTY memory edit screen

• Pre-programmed contents

CH	Name	Contents
RT1	MYCALLx2	↲DE ICOM ICOM K↲
RT2	MYCALLx3	↲DE ICOM ICOM ICOM K↲
RT3	QSLUR599	↲QSL UR 599–599 BK↲
RT4	DE+UR599	↲QSL DE ICOM ICOM UR 599–599 BK↲
RT5	73 GL SK	↲73 GL SK↲
RT6	CQ CQ CQ	↲CQ CQ CQ DE ICOM ICOM ICOM K↲
RT7	RIG&ANT	↲MY TRANSCEIVER IS IC–7800 & ANTENNA IS A 3–ELEMENT TRIBAND YAGI.↲
RT8	EQUIP.	↲MY RTTY EQUIPMENT IS INTERNAL FSK UNIT & DEMODULATOR OF THE IC–7800.↲

The contents of the RTTY memories can be set using the memory edit menu. The memory can memorize and re-transmit 8 RTTY contents for often-used RTTY sentences. Total capacity of the memory is 70 characters per memory channel.

• Programming contents

① During RTTY mode operation, push [F-3•DECODE] to select RTTY decode screen.

② Push [F-4•TX MEM] to select RTTY memory screen, then push [F-6•EDIT] to select RTTY memory edit screen.
  • RTTY memory contents of the Channel 1 (RT1) is selected.

③ Push [F-7•RT1..RT8] to several times to select the desired RTTY memory channel to be edited.

④ Push [F-5•◀ ▶] to select the edit item between memory contents and memory name.

⑤ Push [ABC], [abc], [123] or [Symbol] to select the character group, then rotate the main dial to select the character, or push the keypad for number input.
  • [abc] appears when [ABC] is pushed when "ABC" character group is selected, and [Symbol] appears when [123] is pushed when "123" character group is selected.
  • Selectable characters (with the main dial);

Key selection	Editable characters
ABC	A to Z (capital letters)
abc	a to z (small letters) (selectable for memory name only)
123	0 to 9 (numbers)
Symbol	! # $ % & ¥ ? " ' ` ^ + − ✱ / . , : ; = < > ( ) [ ] { }	_ ˜ @ (For the memory contents setting, ! $ & ? " ' − / . , : ; ( ) ↲ are selectable.)

✔ For your convenience

When a PC keyboard is connected to [KEYBOARD] connector on the rear panel, the RTTY memory contents can also be edited from the keyboard.

⑥ Push [F-1•◀] or [F-2•▶] to move the cursor backwards or forwards, respectively.
  • Pushing [F-3•DEL] deletes a character and [F-4•SPACE] inserts a space.

⑦ Repeat steps ⑤ and ⑥ to input the desired characters.

⑧ Push [EXIT/SET] to set the contents and exit RTTY memory edit screen.

◇ RTTY decode set mode
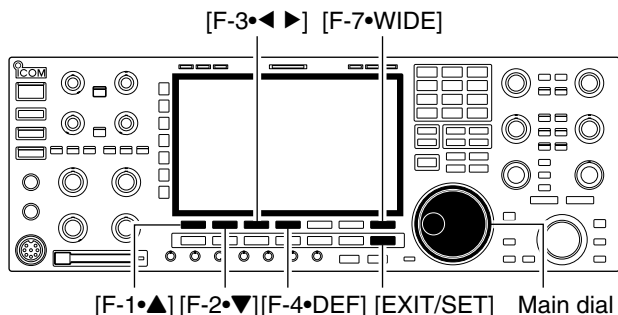
This set mode is used to set the decode USOS function, time stamp setting, etc.

• Setting contents

① During RTTY mode operation, push [F-3•DECODE] to select RTTY decode screen.

② Push [F-1•<MENU2>] to select RTTY decode menu 2, then push [F-6•SET] to select RTTY decode set mode.
  • Push [F-7•WIDE] to toggle the screen size from normal and wide.

③ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired set item.

④ Set the desired condition using the main dial.
  • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select a default condition or value.
  • Push [F-3•◄ ►] to select the set contents for some items.

⑤ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit from set mode.

[F-3•◄ ►] [F-7•WIDE]

[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼][F-4•DEF] [EXIT/SET] Main dial

• RTTY decode set mode screen

```
                    RTTY DECODE SET
AGC   RTTY Decode USOS              ON
MID   RTTY Decode New Line Code     CR,LF,CR+LF
      RTTY Diddle                   BLANK
1/4   RTTY TX USOS                  ON
OFF   RTTY Auto CR+LF by TX         ON
      RTTY Time Stamp               ON
VSC   RTTY Time Stamp (Time)        Local
OFF   RTTY Time Stamp (Frequency)   OFF
   ▲        ▼           DEF              WIDE
```

RTTY Decode USOS   **ON**

Turn the letter code decoding after receiving a "space" (USOS; UnShift On Space function) capability ON and OFF.

• ON   : Decode as letter code.
• OFF : Decode as character code.

RTTY Decode New Line Code   **CR,LF,CR+LF**

Selects the new line code of the internal RTTY decoder.
CR: Carriage Return, LF: Line Feed

• CR,LF,CR;LF : Makes new line with any codes.
• CR+LF   : Makes new line with CR+LF code only.

RTTY Diddle   **BLANK**

Selects the diddle condition.

• BLANK   : Transmits blank code during no code transmission.
• LTRS   : Transmits letter code during no code transmission.
• OFF   : Turns the diddle function OFF.

RTTY TX USOS   **ON**

Selects the FIGS insertion even changing from LTRS to FIGS does not necessary when sending a numeral or symbol character after a space.

• ON   : Inserts FIGS.
• OFF : Not insert FIGS.

RTTY Auto CR+LF by TX   **ON**

Selects the automatic new line code (CR+LF) transmission capability.

• ON   : Transmits CR+LF code once.
• OFF : Transmits no CR+LF code.

◇ **RTTY decode set mode (continued)**

RTTY Time Stamp   ON

Turn the time stamp (date, transmission or reception time) indication ON and OFF.

- ON   : Indicates the time stamp.
- OFF   : No time stamp indication.

RTTY Time Stamp (Time)   Local

Selects the clock indication for time stamp usage.

NOTE: The time won't be displayed when "OFF" is selected in "RTTY Time Stamp" as above.

- Local : Selects the time that set in "Time (Now)."
- UTC* : Selects the time that set in "CLOCK2."
     *The name of choice may differ according to "CLOCK2 Name" setting (p, 11-2). "UTC" is the default name setting of CLOCK2.

RTTY Time Stamp (Frequency)   OFF

Selects the operating frequency indication for time stamp usage.

NOTE: The frequency won't be displayed when "OFF" is selected in "RTTY Time Stamp" as above.

- ON   : Indicates the operating frequency.
- OFF   : No operating frequency indication.
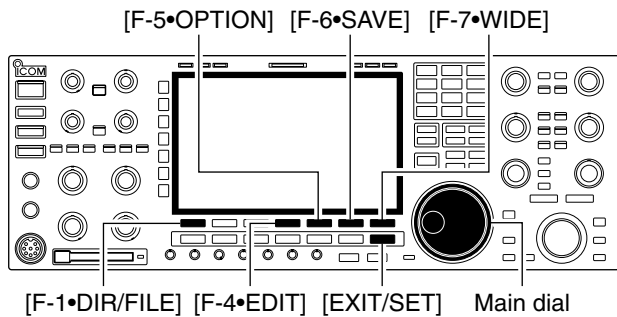
RTTY Font Color (Receive)   ▭ ▭128 ▭255 ▭128

Set the text color for received characters.

- The color is set in RGB format.
- Push [F-3•◄ ►] to select R (Red), G (Green) and B (Blue), and rotate the ratio from 0 to 255 range.
- The set color is indicated in the box beside the RGB scale.

RTTY Font Color (Transmit)   ▭ ▭255 ▭106 ▭106

Set the text color for transmitted characters.

- The color is set in RGB format.
- Push [F-3•◄ ►] to select R (Red), G (Green) and B (Blue), and rotate the ratio from 0 to 255 range.
- The set color is indicated in the box beside the RGB scale.

RTTY Font Color (Time Stamp)   ▭ ▭ 0 ▭155 ▭189

Set the text color for time stamp indication.

- The color is set in RGB format.
- Push [F-3•◄ ►] to select R (Red), G (Green) and B (Blue), and rotate the ratio from 0 to 255 range.
- The set color is indicated in the box beside the RGB scale.

RTTY Font Color (TX Buffer)   ▭ ▭255 ▭255 ▭255

Set the text color in the TX buffer screen.

- The color is set in RGB format.
- Push [F-3•◄ ►] to select R (Red), G (Green) and B (Blue), and rotate the ratio from 0 to 255 range.
- The set color is indicated in the box beside the RGB scale.

◇ **Data saving**

[F-5•OPTION] [F-6•SAVE] [F-7•WIDE]

[F-1•DIR/FILE] [F-4•EDIT] [EXIT/SET] Main dial

• **Decode file save screen**

• **Decode file save screen— file name edit**

• **Save option screen**

The contents of the RTTY memory and received sig-nal can be saved into the CF memory card.

① During RTTY decode screen indication, push [F-1•<MENU1>] to select RTTY decode menu 2.
② Push [F-5•SAVE] to select decode file save screen.
③ Change the following conditions if desired.

• **File name:**
  ⑴ Push [F-4•EDIT] to select file name edit con-dition.
    • Push [F-1• DIR/FILE] several times to select the file name, if necessary.
  ⑵ Push [ABC], [123] or [Symbol] to select the character group, then rotate the main dial to select the character.
    • [ABC] : A to Z (capital letters); [123]: 0 to 9 (nu-merals); [Symbol]: ! # $ % & ' ` ^ + − = ( ) [ ] { } _ ~ @ can be selected.
    • Push [F-1•◀] to move the cursor left, push [F-2•▶] to move the cursor right, [F-3•DEL] delete a char-acter and push [F-4•SPACE] to insert a space.
  ⑶ Push [EXIT/SET] to set the file name.

• **File format**
  ⑴ Push [F-5•OPTION] to enter save option screen.
  ⑵ Rotate the main dial to select the saving for-mat from Text and HTML.
    • "Text" is the default setting.
    • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default set-ting.
  ⑶ Push [EXIT/SET] to return to the previous in-dication.

• **Saving location**
  ⑴ Push [F-1•DIR/FILE] to select tree view screen.
  ⑵ Select the desired directory or folder in the CF memory card.
    • Push [F-4•◀ ▶] to select the upper directory.
    • Push [F-2•▲] or [F-3•▼] to select folder in the same directory.
    • Push [F-4•◀ ▶] for 1 sec. to select a folder in the directory.
    • Push [F-5•REN/DEL] to rename the folder.
    • Push [F-5•REN/DEL] for 1 sec. to delete the folder.
    • Push [F-6•MAKE] for 1 sec. to making a new folder. (Edit the name with the same manner as the "• File name" above.)
  ⑶ Push [F-1•DIR/FILE] twice to select the file name.
④ Push [F-6•SAVE].
  • After the saving is completed, return to RTTY decode menu 2 automatically.

✔ **For your convenient!**
Both of data formats, Text and HTML, are compatible data format in a PC. The saved data can be copied to your PC for record, etc.

■ Operating PSK
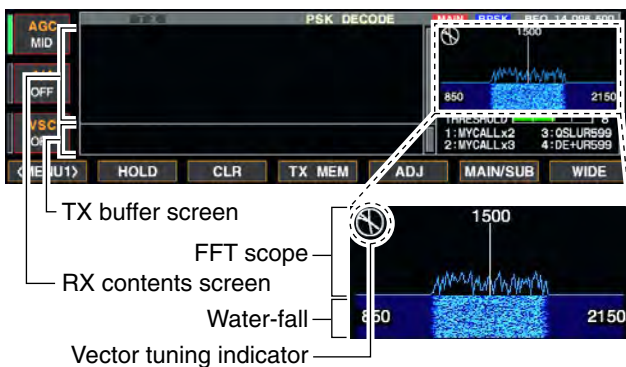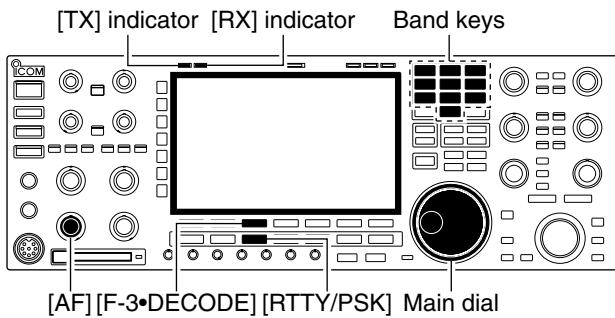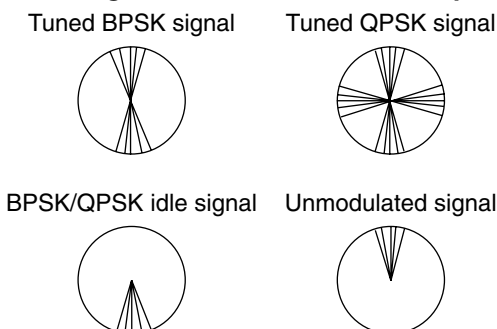
The PSK31 encoder/decoder is built-in to the IC-7800. When connecting a PC keyboard (p. 2-6), PSK31 operation can be performed without a PSK operation software installed PC.

When using your PSK operation software, consult the manual that comes with the software.

① Push a band key to select the desired band.
② Push [RTTY/PSK] to select PSK.
　• After PSK mode is selected, push [RTTY/PSK] for 1 sec. to toggle between PSK and PSK-R modes.
　• "PSK" or "PSK-R" appears.
③ Push [F-3•DECODE] to displays the decoder screen.
　• The IC-7800 has a PSK31 decoder.
④ Tune to the desired signal with the main dial.
　• The signal is tuned when the radiated lines in the vector tuning indicator narrow as in the example below.
　• The radiated lines in the vector tuning indicator are displayed in sporadically.
　• When a PSK signal is received, the water-fall indicator is activated.
　• The water-fall indicator shows the signal condition within the passband width and a vertical line appears when a PSK signal is received.
⑤ Rotate [AF] to set the audio to a comfortable listening level.
⑥ Press [F12] of the connected keyboard to transmit.
　• [TX] indicator lights red.
⑦ Type from the connected keyboard to enter the contents that you want to transmit.
　• The typewritten contents are indicated in the TX buffer screen and transmitted immediately.
　• The text color will be changed when transmitted.
　• Press one of [F1]–[F8] to transmit the TX memory contents.
⑧ Press [F12] of the keyboard to return to receive.
⑨ Push [TRANSMIT] to return to receive.

✔ For your convenience
The transmission contents can be typewritten before being transmit.

① Perform the steps ① to ④ above.
② Type from the connected keyboard to enter the contents that you want to transmit.
　• The typewritten contents are indicated in the TX buffer screen.
③ Press [F12] of the connected keyboard to transmit the typewritten contents.
　• The color of displayed text, in the TX buffer screen, will be changed when transmitted.
　• To cancel the transmission, press [F12] twice.
④ Press [F12] of the keyboard to return to receive.

[TX] indicator [RX] indicator Band keys

[AF] [F-3•DECODE] [RTTY/PSK] Main dial

Appears

TX buffer screen
FFT scope
RX contents screen
Water-fall
Vector tuning indicator

• Vector tuning indicator indication example
Tuned BPSK signal   Tuned QPSK signal
BPSK/QPSK idle signal   Unmodulated signal

◇ Convenient functions for receive

• **Preamp** (p. 5-9)
➥ Push [P.AMP] several times to set the preamp OFF, preamp 1 ON or preamp 2 ON.
  • "P.AMP1" or "P.AMP2" appears when the preamp 1 or preamp 2 is set to ON, respectively. (depending on operating frequency band)

• **Attenuator** (p. 5-9)
➥ Push [ATT] several times to set the attenuator in 6 dB steps.
  • Pushing [P.AMP] for 1 sec. to set the attenuator in 3 dB steps.
  • "ATT" and attenuation level appear when the attenuator is set to ON.

• **Noise blanker** (p. 5-17)
➥ Push [NB] switch to turn the noise blanker ON and OFF, and then rotate [NB] control to adjust the threshold level.
  • Noise blanker indicator (above [NB] switch) lights when the noise blanker is set to ON.
  • Push [NB] for 1 sec. to enter noise blanker set mode.

• **Twin PBT (passband tuning)** (p. 5-12)
➥ Rotate [TWIN PBT] controls (inner/outer).
  • Push [PBT CLEAR] to clear the settings.

• **Noise reduction** (p. 5-18)
➥ Push [NR] switch to turn the noise reduction ON and OFF.
  • Rotate [NR] control to adjust the noise reduction level.
  • Noise reduction indicator (above [NR] switch) lights when the noise reduction is set to ON.

• **AGC (auto gain control)** (p. 5-11)
➥ Push [AGC] switch several times to select AGC FAST, AGC MID or AGC SLOW.
➥ Push [AGC VR] to turn the AGC time constant manual setting ON and OFF.
  • Rotate [AGC] control to adjust the time constant.

• **Fine tuning** (p. 3-7)
➥ During no kHz tuning step function OFF (no "▼" indication), push [TS] for 1 sec.
  • May not be decoded correctly with the 10 Hz step tuning.

• **¼ function** (p. 3-6)
➥ Push [1/4] to turn the ¼ function ON and OFF.

◇ About BPSK and QPSK mode
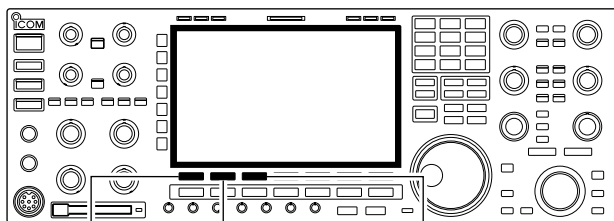
[F-1•<MENU1>] [F-2•B/QPSK] [F-3•DECODE]

• **PSK decode screen— BPSK mode**

• **PSK decode screen— QPSK mode**

BPSK and QPSK modes are available for the PSK31.
• BPSK (Binary Phase Shift Keying) mode is the most often used mode.
• QPSK (Quadrature Phase Shift Keying) mode has error correction capability to provides a better decoding than BPSK mode operation even in a worth condition. However, much accurate tuning is required with the QPSK mode, due to the QPSK mode has only few phase margin.

① During PSK mode selection, push [F-3•DECODE] to display the PSK decode screen.
② Push [F-1•<MENU1>] to select PSK decode menu 2.
③ Push [F-2•B/QPSK] to toggle between BPSK and QPSK mode alternately.

◇ Functions for the PSK decoder indication
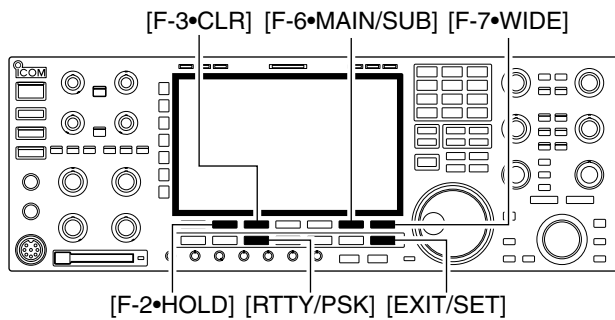
[F-3•CLR] [F-6•MAIN/SUB] [F-7•WIDE]

[F-2•HOLD] [RTTY/PSK] [EXIT/SET]

• **Wide screen indication**

① Push a band key to select the desired band.
② Push [RTTY/PSK] to select PSK.
  • After PSK mode is selected, push [RTTY/PSK] for 1 sec. to toggle between PSK and PSK-R modes.
  • "PSK" or "PSK-R" appears.
③ Push [F-3•DECODE] to display the decoder screen.
  • When tuned into a PSK signal, decoded characters are displayed in the RX contents screen.
④ Push [F-2•HOLD] to freeze the current screen.
  • " HOLD " appears while the function is in use.
  • Push [F-2•HOLD] again to release the function.
⑤ Push [F-3•CLR] for 1 sec. to clear the displayed characters.
  • " HOLD " indicator disappears at the same time when the hold function is in use.
⑥ Push [F-7•WIDE] to toggle the PSK decode screen size from normal and wide.
  • S/RF meter type during wide screen indication can be selected in display set mode. (pgs. 3-11, 12-11)
⑦ Push [F-6•MAIN/SUB] to toggle the MAIN and SUB band for decode operation.
  • Dualwatch function (p. 5-16) should be ON when SUB band is selected for decode operation.
⑧ Push [EXIT/SET] to close the PSK decode screen.

◇ Setting the decoder threshold level

Adjust the PSK decoder threshold level if some characters are displayed when no signal is received.

① Call up the PSK decoder screen as described above.
② Push [F-5•ADJ] to select the threshold level setting condition.
③ Rotate the main dial to adjust the PSK decoder threshold level.
  • Push [F-6•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default setting.
④ Push [F-5•ADJ] to exit from the threshold level setting condition.

◇ PSK memory transmission
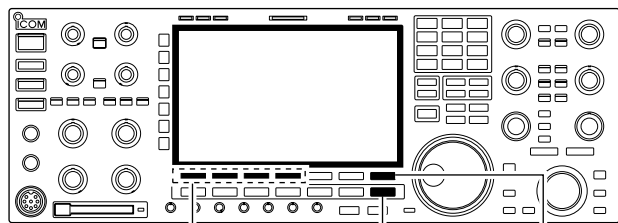
[F-1•PT1]–[F-4•PT4] [EXIT/SET] [F-7•1–4/5–8]
[F-1•PT5]–[F-4•PT8]

Pre-set characters can be sent using the PSK memory. Contents of the memory are set using the edit menu.

① During PSK mode operation, push [F-3•DECODE] to select PSK decode screen.
② Push [F-4•TX MEM] to select PSK memory screen.
③ Push [F-7•1–4/5–8] to select memory bank then push one of the function keys ([F-1•PT1] to [F-4•PT4] or [F-1•PT5] to [F-4•PT8]).
   • When no keyboard is connected, the selected memory contents will be transmitted immediately.
   • When a keyboard is connected, the memory contents will be transmitted immediately when function key is pushed, or transmitted after [F12] on the connected keyboard is pressed, depending on auto transmission/reception setting (see below).
   • The transmission date, time, reception date and/or time may be displayed in RX contents screen, depending on setting.

◇ Automatic transmission/reception setting
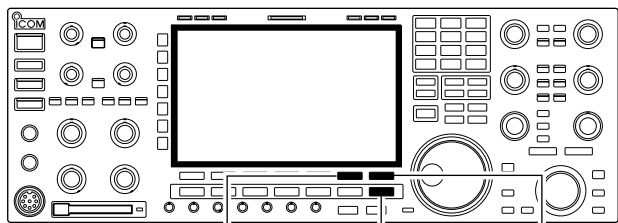
[F-6•AUTO TX] [EXIT/SET] [F-7•PT1..PT8]

① During PSK mode operation, push [F-3•DECODE] to select PSK decode screen.
② Push [F-4•TX MEM] to select PSK memory screen, then push [F-6•EDIT] to select PSK memory edit screen.
   • PSK memory contents of the Channel 1 (PT1) is selected.
③ Push [F-7•PT1..PT8] several times to select the desired RTTY memory.
④ Push [F-6•AUTO TX] several times to select the desired condition as follow.

   • AUTO TX/RX : Automatically transmits the selected memory and returns to receive after the transmission.
   • AUTO TX   : Automatically transmits the selected memory. To return to receive, press [F12] on the keyboard.
   • AUTO RX   : Press [F12] on the keyboard to transmit the selected memory. Automatically returns to receive after the transmission.
   • No indication : Press [F12] on the keyboard to transmit the selected memory and press [F12] again to return to receive.
⑤ Push [EXIT/SET] to return to exit from PSK memory edit condition.

NOTE: The transceiver always functions as the "AUTO TX/RX" setting when no keyboard is connected.

◇ **Editing PSK memory**

[123]/[Symbol] [ABC]/[abc] [F-3•DEL] [F-4•SPACE]

[F-1•◀] [F-2•▶] [F-5•◀▶][EXIT/SET][F-7•PT1..PT8]
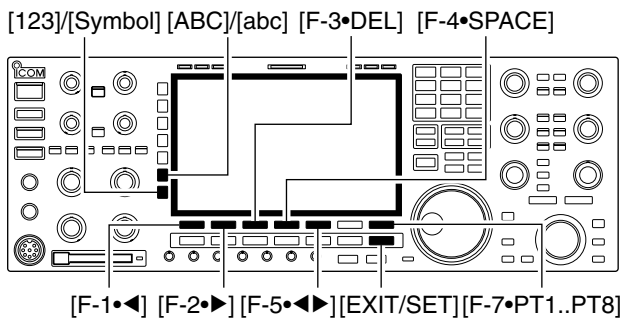
• **PSK memory edit screen**

• **Pre-programmed contents**

CH	Name	Contents
PT1	MYCALLx2	↵DE Icom Icom K↵
PT2	MYCALLx3	↵DE Icom Icom Icom K↵
PT3	QSLUR599	↵QSL UR 599 599 BK↵
PT4	DE+UR599	↵QSL DE Icom Icom UR 599 599 BK↵
PT5	73 GL SK	↵73 GL SK↵
PT6	CQ CQ CQ	↵CQ CQ CQ DE Icom Icom Icom K↵
PT7	RIG&ANT	↵My transceiver is IC–7800 & Antenna is a 3–element triband yagi..↵
PT8	EQUIP.	↵My PSK equipment is internal modulator & demodulator of the IC–7800.↵

The contents of the PSK memories can be set using the memory edit menu. The memory can memorize and re-transmit 8 PSK contents for often-used PSK sentences. Total capacity of the memory is 70 characters per memory channel.

• **Programming contents**

① During PSK mode operation, push [F-3•DECODE] to select PSK decode screen.

② Push [F-4•TX MEM] to select PSK memory screen, then push [F-6•EDIT] to select PSK memory edit screen.
  • PSK memory contents of the Channel 1 (PT1) is selected.

③ Push [F-7•PT1..PT8] several times to select the desired PSK memory channel to be edited.

④ Push [F-5•◀ ▶] to select the edit item between memory contents and memory name.

⑤ Push [ABC], [abc], [123] or [Symbol] to select the character group, then rotate the main dial to select the character, or push the keypad for number input.
  • [abc] appears when [ABC] is pushed when "ABC" character group is selected, and [Symbol] appears when [123] is pushed when "123" character group is selected.
  • Selectable characters (with the main dial);

Key selection	Editable characters
ABC	A to Z (capital letters)
abc	a to z (small letters)
123	0 to 9 (numbers)
Symbol	! # $ % & ¥ ? " ' ` ^ + − ✱ / . , : ; = < > ( ) [ ] { } l _ ˜ @ ↵ ("↵" is for the memory contents setting only.)

✔ *For your convenience*
When a PC keyboard is connected to [KEYBOARD] connector on the rear panel, the PSK memory contents can also be edited from the keyboard.

⑥ Push [F-1•◀] or [F-2•▶] to move the cursor backwards or forwards, respectively.
  • Pushing [F-3•DEL] deletes a character and [F-4•SPACE] inserts a space.

⑦ Repeat steps ⑤ and ⑥ to input the desired characters.

⑧ Push [EXIT/SET] to set the contents and exit PSK memory edit screen.

◇ PSK decode set mode
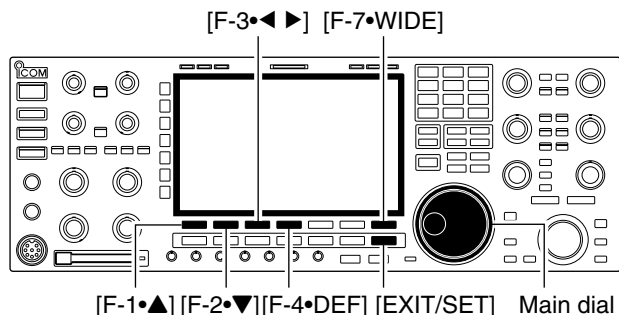
This set mode is used to set the decode USOS function, time stamp setting, etc.

[F-3•◀ ▶] [F-7•WIDE]

[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼][F-4•DEF] [EXIT/SET] Main dial

• Setting contents
① During PSK mode operation, push [F-3•DECODE] to select PSK decode screen.
② Push [F-1•<MENU2>] to select PSK decode menu 2, then push [F-6•SET] to select PSK decode set mode.
  • Push [F-7•WIDE] to toggle the screen size from normal and wide.
③ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired set item.
④ Set the desired condition using the main dial.
  • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select a default condition or value.
  • Push [F-3•◀ ▶] to select the set contents for some items.
⑤ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit from set mode.

PSK Time Stamp	ON
Turn the time stamp (date, transmission or reception time) indication ON and OFF.	• ON : Indicates the time stamp. • OFF : No time stamp indication.

PSK Time Stamp (Time)	Local
Selects the clock indication for time stamp usage. **NOTE:** The time won't be displayed when "OFF" is selected in "PSK Time Stamp" as above.	• Local : Selects the time that set in "Time (Now)." • UTC* : Selects the time that set in "CLOCK2." *The name of choice may differ according to "CLOCK2 Name" setting (p, 11-2). "UTC" is the default name setting of CLOCK2.

PSK Time Stamp (Frequency)	OFF
Selects the operating frequency indication for time stamp usage. **NOTE:** The frequency won't be displayed when "OFF" is selected in "PSK Time Stamp" as above.	• ON : Indicates the operating frequency. • OFF : No operating frequency indication.

PSK Font Color (Receive)	128 255 128
Set the text color for received characters.	• The color is set in RGB format. • Push [F-3•◀ ▶] to select R (Red), G (Green) and B (Blue), and rotate the ratio from 0 to 255 range. • The set color is indicated in the box beside the RGB scale.

◇ PSK decode set mode (continued)

PSK Font Color (Transmit)   255   106   106

Set the text color for transmitted characters.

- The color is set in RGB format.
- Push [F-3•◀ ▶] to select R (Red), G (Green) and B (Blue), and rotate the ratio from 0 to 255 range.
- The set color is indicated in the box beside the RGB scale.

PSK Font Color (Time Stamp)   0   155   189

Set the text color for time stamp indication.

- The color is set in RGB format.
- Push [F-3•◀ ▶] to select R (Red), G (Green) and B (Blue), and rotate the ratio from 0 to 255 range.
- The set color is indicated in the box beside the RGB scale.

PSK Font Color (TX Buffer)   255   255   255

Set the text color in the TX buffer screen.

- The color is set in RGB format.
- Push [F-3•◀ ▶] to select R (Red), G (Green) and B (Blue), and rotate the ratio from 0 to 255 range.
- The set color is indicated in the box beside the RGB scale.

◇ Data saving

[F-5•OPTION] [F-6•SAVE] [F-7•WIDE]

[F-1•DIR/FILE] [F-4•EDIT] [EXIT/SET]   Main dial

• Decode file save screen

• Decode file save screen— file name edit

• Save option screen

The contents of the PSK memory and received signal can be saved into the CF memory card.

① During PSK decode screen indication, push [F-1•<MENU1>] to select PSK decode menu 2.
② Push [F-5•SAVE] to select decode file save screen.
③ Change the following conditions if desired.

• **File name:**
   ⒈ Push [F-4•EDIT] to select file name edit condition.
      • Push [F-1• DIR/FILE] several times to select the file name, if necessary.
   ⒉ Push [ABC], [123] or [Symbol] to select the character group, then rotate the main dial to select the character.
      • [ABC] : A to Z (capital letters); [123]: 0 to 9 (numerals); [Symbol]: ! # $ % & ' ` ^ + − = ( ) [ ] { } _ ~ @ can be selected.
      • Push [F-1•◄] to move the cursor left, push [F-2•►] to move the cursor right, [F-3•DEL] delete a character and push [F-4•SPACE] to insert a space.
   ⒊ Push [EXIT/SET] to set the file name.

• **File format**
   ⒈ Push [F-5•OPTION] to enter save option screen.
   ⒉ Rotate the main dial to select the saving format from Text and HTML.
      • "Text" is the default setting.
      • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default setting.
   ⒊ Push [EXIT/SET] to return to the previous indication.

• **Saving location**
   ⒈ Push [F-1•DIR/FILE] to select tree view screen.
   ⒉ Select the desired directory or folder in the CF memory card.
      • Push [F-4•◄ ►] to select the upper directory.
      • Push [F-2•▲] or [F-3•▼] to select folder in the same directory.
      • Push [F-4•◄ ►] for 1 sec. to select a folder in the directory.
      • Push [F-5•REN/DEL] to rename the folder.
      • Push [F-5•REN/DEL] for 1 sec. to delete the folder.
      • Push [F-6•MAKE] for 1 sec. to mak a new folder. (Edit the name with the same manner as the "• File name" above.)
   ⒊ Push [F-1•DIR/FILE] twice to select the file name.
④ Push [F-6•SAVE].
   • After the saving is completed, return to PSK decode menu 2 automatically.

✔ For your convenient!
Both of data formats, Text and HTML, are compatible data format in a PC. The saved data can be copied to your PC for record, etc.

■ Operating AM

[TX] indicator
[MIC]   [RX] indicator   Band keys

[AF]   [AM/FM]   Main dial

Appears

ANT 1
BW 6.0k SFT 0 AGC-MID
ANT 1 P.AMP 1
METER Po
P.AMP 1
TX
VFO A M FIL2
ATT OFF
14.100.00

① Push a band key to select the desired band.
② Push [AM/FM] to select AM.
  • "AM" indicator appears.
  • After AM mode is selected, push [AM/FM] to toggle between AM and FM modes.
③ Rotate the main dial to tune the desired frequency.
  • The S-meter indicates received signal strength when signal is received.
④ Rotate [AF] to set audio to a comfortable listening level.
⑤ Push [TRANSMIT] or [PTT] (microphone) to transmit.
  • The TX indicator lights red.
⑥ Speak into the microphone at your normal voice level.
  • Adjust the microphone gain with [MIC] at this step, if necessary.
⑦ Push [TRANSMIT] or release [PTT] (microphone) to return to receive.

◇ Convenient functions for receive

• **Preamp** (p. 5-9)
➡ Push [P.AMP] several times to set the preamp OFF, preamp 1 ON or preamp 2 ON.
  • "P.AMP1" or "P.AMP2" appears when the preamp 1 or preamp 2 is set to ON, respectively. (depending on operating frequency band)

• **Attenuator** (p. 5-9)
➡ Push [ATT] several times to set the attenuator in 6 dB steps.
  • Pushing [P.AMP] for 1 sec. to set the attenuator in 3 dB steps.
  • "ATT" and attenuation level appear when the attenuator is set to ON.

• **Noise blanker** (p. 5-17)
➡ Push [NB] switch to turn the noise blanker ON and OFF, and then rotate [NB] control to adjust the threshold level.
  • Noise blanker indicator (above [NB] switch) lights when the noise blanker is set to ON.
  • Push [NB] for 1 sec. to enter noise blanker set mode.

• **Noise reduction** (p. 5-18)
➡ Push [NR] switch to turn the noise reduction ON and OFF.
  • Rotate [NR] control to adjust the noise reduction level.
  • Noise reduction indicator (above [NR] switch) lights when the noise reduction is set to ON.

• **Twin PBT (passband tuning)** (p. 5-12)
➡ Rotate [TWIN PBT] controls (inner/outer).
  • Push [PBT CLEAR] to clear the settings.

• **Notch filter** (p. 5-19)
➡ Push [NOTCH] switch to turn the manual notch function ON and OFF.
  • Rotate [NOTCH] control to set the attenuating frequency.
  • Notch indicator (above [NOTCH] switch) lights when either the manual notch is set to ON.

• **AGC (auto gain control)** (p. 5-11)
➡ Push [AGC] switch several times to select AGC FAST, AGC MID or AGC SLOW.
➡ Push [AGC VR] to turn the AGC time constant manual setting ON and OFF.
  • Rotate [AGC] control to adjust the time constant.

• **Auto tuning function** (p. 1-9)
➡ Push [AUTO TUNE] to turn the auto tuning function ON and OFF.
  • The transceiver automatically tuned into the desired signal within ±500 kHz range.

  IMPORTANT!
  When receiving a weak signal, or receiving a signal with interference, the automatic tuning function may not be tuned, or tuned into an undesired signal.

◇ **Convenient functions for transmit**

• **VOX (voice operated transmit)** (p. 6-2)
  ➥ Push [VOX/BK-IN] to turn the VOX function ON
     and OFF.
     • "VOX" appears when the VOX function is set to ON.

• **Transmit quality monitor** (p. 6-4)
  ➥ Push [MONI] to turn the monitor function ON and
     OFF.
     • Rotate [MONI GAIN] to adjust the monitor gain.
     • Monitor indicator (above [MONI] switch) lights when
       the monitor function is set to ON.

• **Audio tone control** (p. 12-4)
  ➥ Push [F-7•SET] then [F-1•LEVEL] to enter level
     set mode. Select an item with [F-1•▲]/[F-2•▼]
     then rotate the main dial to adjust the audio tone.

■ Operating FM

[TX] indicator
[MIC]   [RX] indicator   Band keys

[AF]   [AM/FM]   Main dial

Appears

① Push a band key to select the desired band.
② Push [AM/FM] to select FM.
  • "FM" indicator appears.
  • After FM mode is selected, push [AM/FM] to toggle between FM and AM modes.
③ Rotate the main dial to tune the desired frequency.
  • The S-meter indicates received signal strength when signal is received.
  • 10 kHz tuning step is preset for the FM mode.
④ Rotate [AF] to set audio to a comfortable listening level.
⑤ Push [TRANSMIT] or [PTT] (microphone) to transmit.
  • The TX indicator lights red.
⑥ Speak into the microphone at your normal voice level.
  • Adjust the microphone gain with [MIC] at this step, if necessary.
⑦ Push [TRANSMIT] or release [PTT] (microphone) to return to receive.

◇ Convenient functions for receive

• **Preamp** (p. 5-9)
➥ Push [P.AMP] several times to set the preamp OFF, preamp 1 ON or preamp 2 ON.
  • "P.AMP1" or "P.AMP2" appears when the preamp 1 or preamp 2 is set to ON, respectively. (depending on operating frequency band)

• **Auto notch filter** (p. 5-19)
➥ Push [NOTCH] switch to turn the auto notch function ON and OFF.
  • Notch indicator (above [NOTCH] switch) lights when either the manual notch is set to ON.

• **Attenuator** (p. 5-9)
➥ Push [ATT] several times to set the attenuator in 6 dB steps.
  • Pushing [P.AMP] for 1 sec. to set the attenuator in 3 dB steps.
  • "ATT" and attenuation level appear when the attenuator is set to ON.

◇ Convenient functions for transmit

• **VOX (voice operated transmit)** (p. 6-2)
➥ Push [VOX/BK-IN] to turn the VOX function ON and OFF.
  • "VOX" appears when the VOX function is set to ON.

• **Transmit quality monitor** (p. 6-4)
➥ Push [MONI] to turn the monitor function ON and OFF.
  • Rotate [MONI GAIN] to adjust the monitor gain.
  • Monitor indicator (above [MONI] switch) lights when the monitor function is set to ON.

• **Audio tone control** (p. 12-4)
➥ Push [F-7•SET] then [F-1•LEVEL] to enter level set mode. Select an item with [F-1•▲]/[F-2•▼] then rotate the main dial to adjust the audio tone.

■ Repeater operation
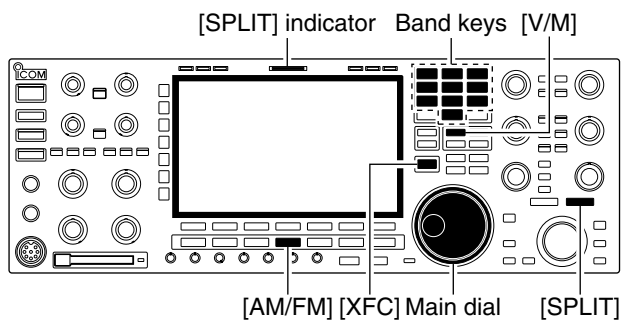
A repeater amplifies received signals and retransmits them at a different frequency. When using a repeater, the transmit frequency is shifted from the receive frequency by an offset frequency. A repeater can be accessed using split frequency operation with the shift frequency set to the repeater's offset frequency.

∅ For accessing a repeater which requires a repeater tone, set the repeater tone frequency in tone frequency set mode as described below.

[SPLIT] indicator   Band keys [V/M]

[AM/FM] [XFC] Main dial   [SPLIT]

ANT 1   METER Po   P.AMP 1   ATT OFF

BW 15k SFT 0   19 23   BW 15k SFT 0
ANT 1 P.AMP 1   AGC-FAST UTC 19-23 ANT 1 P.AMP 1   AGC-FAST

TONE SPLIT TX   TONE
VFO FM FIL1   VFO FM FIL1
29.650.00   29.550.00

① Set the offset frequencies (HF, 50 MHz) and turn ON the quick split function in miscellaneous (others) set mode in advance. (p. 12-14)
② Push [V/M] to select VFO mode.
③ Push the desired band key.
④ Push [AM/FM] several times to select FM mode.
⑤ Set the receive frequency (repeater output frequency).
⑥ Push [SPLIT] for 1 sec. to start repeater operation.
  • Repeater tone is turned ON automatically.
  • [SPLIT] indicator lights and " SPLIT " appears on the LCD.
  • Shifted transmit frequency and "TX" appear in the sub band.
  • The transmit frequency can be monitored while pushing [XFC] or using dualwatch.
⑦ Push and hold [PTT] to transmit; release [PTT] to receive.
⑧ To return to simplex, push [SPLIT] momentarily.

◇ Repeater tone frequency setting
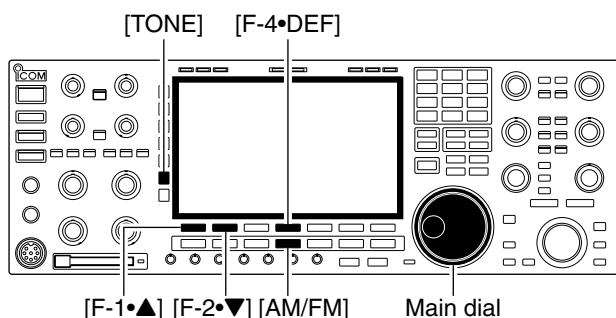
Some repeaters require subaudible tones to be accessed. Subaudible tones are superimposed over your normal signal and must be set in advance. The transceiver has 50 tones from 67.0 Hz to 254.1 Hz.

[TONE]   [F-4•DEF]

[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼] [AM/FM]   Main dial

AGC FAST   TONE TONE   VSC OFF

TONE FREQUENCY

REPEATER TONE   88.5Hz
T-SQL TONE   88.5Hz

▲   ▼   DEF   T-SCAN

① Select FM mode.
② Push [TONE] for 1 sec. to tone frequency set mode.
③ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select REPEATER TONE item.
④ Rotate the main dial to select the desired repeater tone frequency.
  • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default setting.
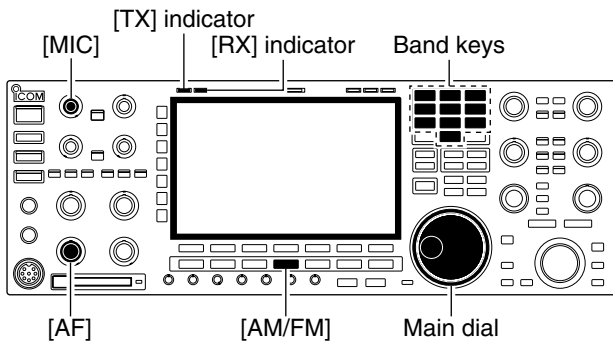⑤ Push [EXIT/SET] to return to the previous indication.

• Available tone frequencies   (unit: Hz)

67.0	85.4	107.2	136.5	165.5	186.2	210.7	254.1
69.3	88.5	110.9	141.3	167.9	189.9	218.1	
71.9	91.5	114.8	146.2	171.3	192.8	225.7	
74.4	94.8	118.8	151.4	173.8	196.6	229.1	
77.0	97.4	123.0	156.7	177.3	199.5	233.6	
79.7	100.0	127.3	159.8	179.9	203.5	241.8	
82.5	103.5	131.8	162.2	183.5	206.5	250.3	

■ Tone squelch operation
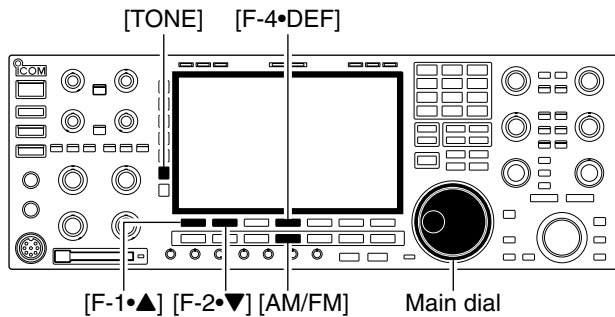
The tone squelch opens only when receiving a signal containing a matching subaudible tone. You can silently wait for calls from group members using the same tone.

① Set the desired frequency band and select FM mode.
② Push [TONE] to turn the tone squelch function ON.
   • "TSQL" appears
③ Push [TONE] for 1 sec. to tone frequency set mode.
④ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select T-SQL TONE item.
⑤ Rotate the main dial to select the desired tone squelch frequency.
   • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default setting.
⑥ Push [EXIT/SET] to return to the previous indication.
⑦ When the received signal includes a matching tone, squelch opens and the signal can be heard.
   • When the received signal's tone does not match, tone squelch does not open, however, the S-indicator shows signal strength.
   • To open the squelch manually, push [XFC].
⑧ Operate the transceiver in the normal way.
⑨ To cancel the tone squelch, push [TONE] to clear "TSQL."

• **Available tone frequencies**   (unit: Hz)

67.0	85.4	107.2	136.5	165.5	186.2	210.7	254.1
69.3	88.5	110.9	141.3	167.9	189.9	218.1	
71.9	91.5	114.8	146.2	171.3	192.8	225.7	
74.4	94.8	118.8	151.4	173.8	196.6	229.1	
77.0	97.4	123.0	156.7	177.3	199.5	233.6	
79.7	100.0	127.3	159.8	179.9	203.5	241.8	
82.5	103.5	131.8	162.2	183.5	206.5	250.3	

[TONE]   [F-4•DEF]

[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼] [AM/FM]   Main dial

■ Data mode (AFSK) operation
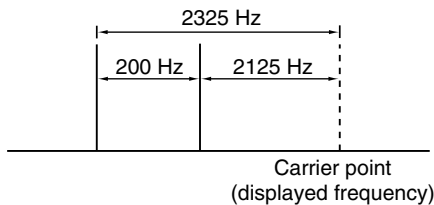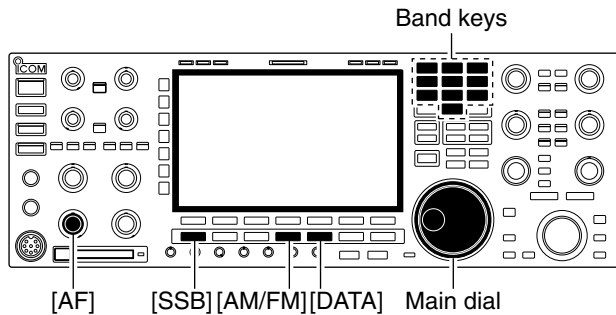
When operating AMTOR or PACKET with your TNC and/or PC software, consult the manual that comes with the TNC and/or the software.

Band keys

[AF] [SSB] [AM/FM] [DATA] Main dial

Appears

2325 Hz

200 Hz   2125 Hz

Carrier point
(displayed frequency)

① Connect a PC and TNC to the transceiver. (p. 2-8)
② Push a band key to select the desired band.
③ Push [SSB] or [AM/FM] to select the desired operating mode.
④ Push [DATA] to turn data mode ON.
   • One of "-D1," "-D2" or "-D3" is additionally appears.
   • During data mode selection, pushing [DATA] for 1 sec. to select data mode 1 (D1), 2 (D2) and 3 (D3) in sequence.
⑤ Rotate the main dial to tune into the desired signal and decoded correctly.
   • Also use the tuning indicator of the TNC or software.
   • During SSB data mode, ¼ tuning function can be used for critical tuning.
⑥ Operate the PC (software) or TNC to transmit.
   • When operating in SSB data mode, adjust the TNC output level so that the ALC meter reading doesn't go outside the ALC zone.

NOTE: When SSB data mode is selected, the audio input from the [ACC1] (pin 6) is used for transmission instead of [MIC]'s.
The fixed condition is used for SSB data transmission as follow.
   • [COMP]   : OFF
   • Tx bandwidth   : MID
   • Tx Tone (Bass)   : 0
   • Tx Tone (Trebles) : 0

✔ *For your information*
Carrier point frequency is displayed when SSB data mode is selected.
See the diagram left for the tone-pair example.

■ Spectrum scope screen

This function allows you to display the conditions of the selected band, as well as relative strengths of signals. The IC-7800 has two modes for the spectrum indication— one is center mode, and anther one is fix mode.

In addition, the IC-7800 has a mini scope screen for regular scope indication.

◇ Center mode

Displays signals around the set frequency within the selected span. The set frequency is always displayed at the center of the screen.

[F-2•ATT] [F-4•HOLD] [F-5•CENT/FIX]

[F-1•SPAN] [F-3•MARKER] [EXIT/SET] [F-6•MAIN/SUB]

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Push [F-1•SCOPE] to select the scope screen.
③ Push [F-5•CENT/FIX] to select the center mode.
  • "CENTER" is displayed when center mode is selected.
④ Push [F-1•SPAN] several times to select the scope span.
  • ±2.5, ±5.0, ±10, ±25, ±50, ±100 and ±250 kHz are available.
  • Sweeping speed is selectable for each span independently in scope set mode. (pgs. 5-5, 5-6)
⑤ Push [F-2•ATT] several times to activate an attenuator or turn the attenuator OFF.
  • 10, 20 and 30 dB attenuators are available.
⑥ Push [F-6•MAIN/SUB] to select main band.
  • The spectrum scope with sub band selection is activated during dualwatch or split frequency operation only.
⑦ Push [F-3•MARKER] several times to select the marker (sub readout or transmit frequency) or turn the marker OFF.
  • "T" displays the marker at the transmit frequency.
  • "S" displays the marker at the sub readout frequency.
  • "<<" or ">>" appears when the marker is out of range.
  • The spectrum scope shows the transmit signal waveform while transmitting. This can be deactivated in scope set mode. (p. 5-4)
  • The spectrum scope shows the peak level holding function. Peak levels are displayed in the background of the current spectrum in a different color until the receive frequency changes. This can be deactivated and the waveform color can be set in scope set mode. (p. 5-5)
⑧ Push [F-4•HOLD] to freeze the current spectrum waveform.
  • "HOLD" appears while the function is in use.
  • The peak hold function can be deactivated in scope set mode.
⑨ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit the scope screen.

• Observed indication example

NOTE: If a strong signal is received, a ghost waveform may appear. Push [F-2•ATT] several times to activate the spectrum scope attenuator in this case. Spurious signal waveform may be displayed. They are made in internal scope circuit and does not indicate a transceiver malfunction.

◇ **Fix mode**

[F-2•ATT] [F-4•HOLD] [F-5•CENT/FIX]

[F-3•MARKER] [EXIT/SET] [F-6•MAIN/SUB]
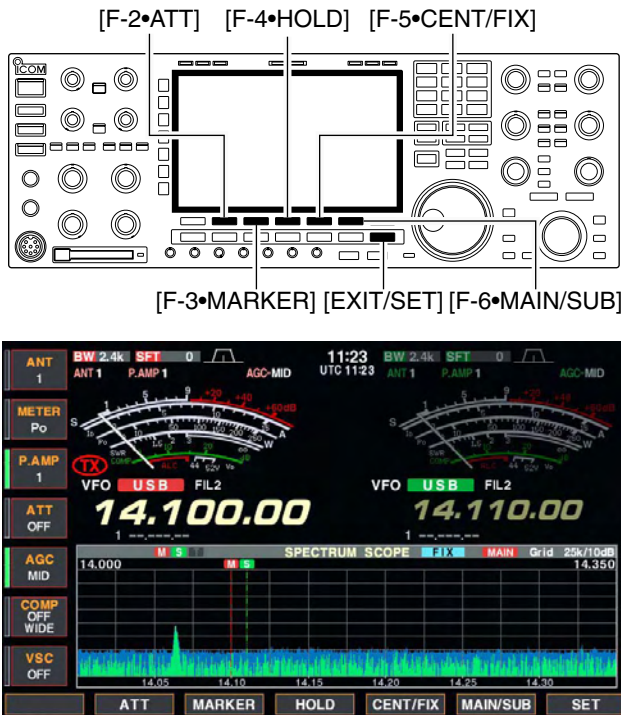
Displays signals within the specified frequency range. The selected frequency band conditions can be grasped at a glance when using this mode.

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Push [F-1•SCOPE] to select the scope screen.
③ Push [F-5•CENT/FIX] to select the fix mode.
  • " **FIX** " is displayed when fix mode is selected.
④ Push [F-2•ATT] several times to activate an attenuator or turn the attenuator OFF.
  • 10, 20 and 30 dB attenuators are available.
⑤ Push [F-6•MAIN/SUB] to select main band.
  • The spectrum scope with sub band selection is activated during dualwatch or split frequency operation only.
⑥ Push [F-3•MARKER] several times to select the marker (sub readout or transmit frequency) or turn the marker OFF.
  • " **M** " displays the marker at the main readout frequency. (always displayed)
  • " **T** " displays the marker at the transmit frequency.
  • " **S** " displays the marker at the sub readout frequency.
  • "<<" or ">>" appears when the marker is out of range.
  • The spectrum scope shows the transmit signal waveform while transmitting. This can be deactivated in scope set mode. (p. 5-4)
  • The spectrum scope shows the peak level holding function. Peak levels are displayed in the background of the current spectrum in a different color until the receive frequency changes. This can be deactivated and the waveform color can be set in scope set mode. (p. 5-5)
⑦ Push [F-4•HOLD] to freeze the current spectrum waveform.
  • " **HOLD** " appears while the function is in use.
  • The peak hold function can be deactivated in scope set mode.
⑧ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit the scope screen.

NOTE: If a strong signal is received, a ghost waveform may appear. Push [F-2•ATT] several times to activate the spectrum scope attenuator in this case.

The scope band width can be specified for each operating frequency band independently in scope set mode. (pgs. 5-6 to 5-8)

◇ Mini scope screen indication
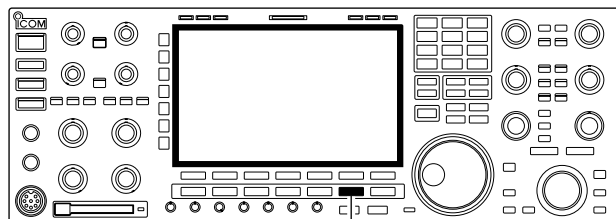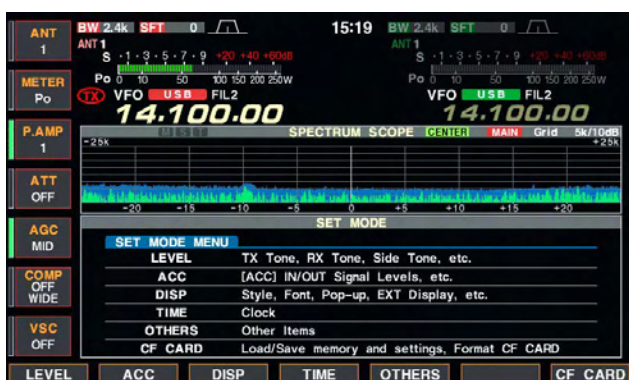
The mini scope screen can be displayed with another screen indication, such as set mode menu, decoder screen, memory list screen, etc. simultaneously.

① Set the scope mode (center or fix), marker, attenuator, span, etc. in advance. (pgs. 5-2, 5-3)
② Push [M.SCOPE] to toggle the mini scope indication ON and OFF.
   • The S/RF meter type during mini scope indication can be selected in display set mode (Meter Type (Wide Screen) item). (p. 12-11)
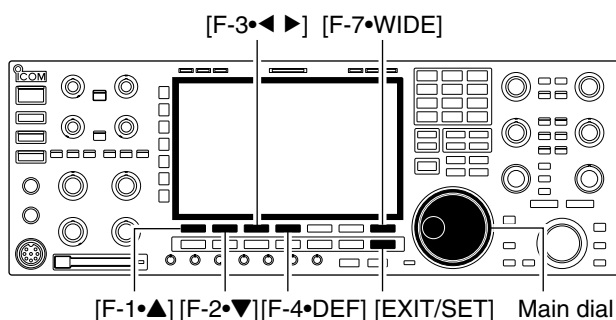
[M.SCOPE]

◇ Scope set mode

This set mode is used to set the waveform color, sweeping speed, scope range for fix mode, etc.

① During spectrum scope indication ON, push [F-7•SET] to select scope set mode screen.
   • Push [F-7•WIDE] to toggle the screen size between normal and wide.
② Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired set item.
③ Set the desired condition using the main dial.
   • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default condition or value.
   • Push [F-3•◄ ►] to select the set contents for some items.
④ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit from set mode.

[F-3•◄ ►] [F-7•WIDE]

[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼] [F-4•DEF] [EXIT/SET] Main dial

Scope during Tx (CENTER Type)　　　ON

Turn the transmitting signal waveform indication ON and OFF.

NOTE: The transmitting signal waveform indication is available for the center mode only.

◇ Scope set mode (continued)

Max Hold	ON

Turn the peak level holding function ON and OFF.

CENTER Type Display	Filter Center

Select the center frequency of the spectrum scope indication (center mode only).

- Filter center : Shows the selected filter's center frequency at the center.
- Carrier Point Center : Shows the selected operating mode carrier point frequency at the center.
- Carrier Point Center (Abs. Freq.) : In addition to the carrier point center setting above, the actual frequency is displayed for the bottom of the scope.

Waveform Color (Current)	0 204 102

Set the waveform color for the currently receiving signals.

- The color is set in RGB format.
- Push [F-3•◀ ▶] to select R (Red), G (Green) and B (Blue), and rotate the ratio from 0 to 255 range.
- The set color is indicated in the box beside the RGB scale.

Waveform Color (Max Hold)	0 102 153

Set the waveform color for the receiving signals maximum level.

- The color is set in RGB format.
- Push [F-3•◀ ▶] to select R (Red), G (Green) and B (Blue), and rotate the ratio from 0 to 255 range.
- The set color is indicated in the box beside the RGB scale.

Sweep Speed (± 2.5k)	MID

Select the sweeping speed for the ±2.5 kHz span selection from SLOW, MID and FAST.

NOTE: The waveform may be displayed incorrectly with "FAST" setting.

(± 5k)	MID

Select the sweeping speed for the ±5 kHz span selection from SLOW, MID and FAST.

NOTE: The waveform may be displayed incorrectly with "FAST" setting.

(± 10k)	FAST

Select the sweeping speed for the ±10 kHz span selection from SLOW, MID and FAST.

(± 25k)	FAST

Select the sweeping speed for the ±25 kHz span selection from SLOW, MID and FAST.

◇ Scope set mode (continued)

(± 50k)	FAST

Select the sweeping speed for the ±50 kHz span selection from SLOW, MID and FAST.

(±100k)	FAST

Select the sweeping speed for the ±100 kHz span selection from SLOW, MID and FAST.

(±250k)	FAST

Select the sweeping speed for the ±250 kHz span selection from SLOW, MID and FAST.

Fixed Edges (0.03 – 1.60)	0.750 – 1.250 MHz

Set the scope edge frequencies for fix mode scope with below 1.6 MHz band selection.

• Set the frequencies within 0.030 to 1.600 MHz range in 1 kHz steps.
  ⁄⁄ Up to 500 kHz band width can be specified, so either edge frequency will be set to the difference between higher and lower frequencies become 5 to 500 kHz automatically while setting another edge frequency.

(1.60 – 2.00)	1.800 – 2.000 MHz

Set the scope edge frequencies for fix mode scope when 1.6 to 2 MHz band is selected.

• Set the frequencies within 1.600 to 2.000 MHz range in 1 kHz steps.

(2.00 – 6.00)	3.500 – 4.000 MHz

Set the scope edge frequencies for fix mode scope when 2 to 6 MHz band is selected.

• Set the frequencies within 2.000 to 6.000 MHz range in 1 kHz steps.
  ⁄⁄ Up to 500 kHz band width can be specified, so either edge frequency will be set to the difference between higher and lower frequencies become 5 to 500 kHz automatically while setting another edge frequency.

(6.00 – 8.00)	7.000 – 7.300 MHz

Set the scope edge frequencies for fix mode scope when 6 to 8 MHz band is selected.

• Set the frequencies within 6.000 to 8.000 MHz range in 1 kHz steps.
  ⁄⁄ Up to 500 kHz band width can be specified, so either edge frequency will be set to the difference between higher and lower frequencies become 5 to 500 kHz automatically while setting another edge frequency.

◇ Scope set mode (continued)

(8.00 – 11.00)	10.100 – 10.150 MHz
Set the scope edge frequencies for fix mode scope when 8 to 11 MHz band is selected.	• Set the frequencies within 8.000 to 11.000 MHz range in 1 kHz steps. ⫰ Up to 500 kHz band width can be specified, so either edge frequency will be set to the difference between higher and lower frequencies become 5 to 500 kHz automatically while setting another edge frequency.

(11.00 – 15.00)	14.000 – 14.350 MHz
Set the scope edge frequencies for fix mode scope when 11 to 15 MHz band is selected.	• Set the frequencies within 11.000 to 15.000 MHz range in 1 kHz steps. ⫰ Up to 500 kHz band width can be specified, so either edge frequency will be set to the difference between higher and lower frequencies become 5 to 500 kHz automatically while setting another edge frequency.

(15.00 – 20.00)	18.068 – 18.168 MHz
Set the scope edge frequencies for fix mode scope when 15 to 20 MHz band is selected.	• Set the frequencies within 15.000 to 20.000 MHz range in 1 kHz steps. ⫰ Up to 500 kHz band width can be specified, so either edge frequency will be set to the difference between higher and lower frequencies become 5 to 500 kHz automatically while setting another edge frequency.

(20.00 – 22.00)	21.000 – 21.450 MHz
Set the scope edge frequencies for fix mode scope when 20 to 22 MHz band is selected.	• Set the frequencies within 20.000 to 22.000 MHz range in 1 kHz steps. ⫰ Up to 500 kHz band width can be specified, so either edge frequency will be set to the difference between higher and lower frequencies become 5 to 500 kHz automatically while setting another edge frequency.

(22.00 – 26.00)	24.890 – 24.990 MHz
Set the scope edge frequencies for fix mode scope when 22 to 26 MHz band is selected.	• Set the frequencies within 22.000 to 26.000 MHz range in 1 kHz steps. ⫰ Up to 500 kHz band width can be specified, so either edge frequency will be set to the difference between higher and lower frequencies become 5 to 500 kHz automatically while setting another edge frequency.

◇ Scope set mode (continued)

(26.00 – 30.00)	28.000 – 28.500 MHz
Set the scope edge frequencies for fix mode scope when 26 to 30 MHz band is selected.	• Set the frequencies within 26.000 to 30.000 MHz range in 1 kHz steps. ⫽ Up to 500 kHz band width can be specified, so either edge frequency will be set to the difference between higher and lower frequencies become 5 to 500 kHz automatically while setting another edge frequency.

(30.00 – 45.00)	30.000 – 30.500 MHz
Set the scope edge frequencies for fix mode scope when 30 to 45 MHz band is selected.	• Set the frequencies within 30.000 to 45.000 MHz range in 1 kHz steps. ⫽ Up to 500 kHz band width can be specified, so either edge frequency will be set to the difference between higher and lower frequencies become 5 to 500 kHz automatically while setting another edge frequency.
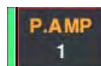
(45.00 – 60.00)	50.000 – 50.500 MHz
Set the scope edge frequencies for fix mode scope when 45 to 60 MHz band is selected.	• Set the frequencies within 45.000 to 60.000 MHz range in 1 kHz steps. ⫽ Up to 500 kHz band width can be specified, so either edge frequency will be set to the difference between higher and lower frequencies become 5 to 500 kHz automatically while setting another edge frequency.

■ Preamplifier
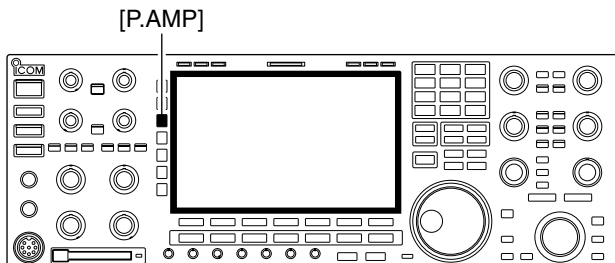
The preamp amplifies received signals in the front end circuit to improve the S/N ratio and sensitivity. Set this to preamp 1 or preamp 2 when receiving weak signals.

➥ Push [P.AMP] several times to set the preamp OFF, preamp 1 ON or preamp 2 ON.

[P.AMP]

P.AMP 1	For all HF bands
P.AMP 2	High gain preamp for 24 MHz band and above

✔ *About the "P.AMP2"*

The "P.AMP 2" is a high gain receive amplifier. When the "P.AMP 2" is used during times of strong electric fields, distortion sometimes results. In such cases, use the transceiver with the "P.AMP 1" or "P.AMP OFF" setting.

The "P.AMP 2" is most effective when:
• Used on bands above 24 MHz and when electric fields are weak.
• Receive sensitivity is insufficient during low gain, or while using a narrow band antenna (such as small loop, a Beverage antenna or a short Yagi antenna, etc.) is used.
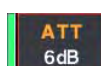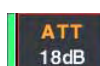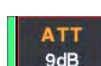
■ Attenuator
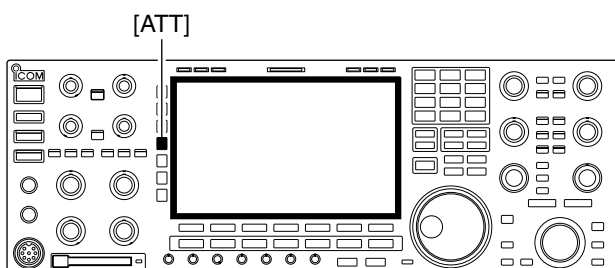
The attenuator prevents a desired signal from distortion when very strong signals are near the desired frequency or when very strong electric fields, such as from broadcasting stations, are near your location.

[ATT]

➥ Push [ATT] several times to set the attenuator 6 dB, 12 dB, 18 dB or attenuator OFF.
➥ Push [ATT] for 1 sec. several times to set the attenuator 3 dB, 6 dB, 9 dB, 12 dB, 15 dB, 18 dB, 21 dB or attenuator OFF.

ATT 3dB	3 dB attenuation	**ATT 15dB**	15 dB attenuation
ATT 6dB	6 dB attenuation	**ATT 18dB**	18 dB attenuation
ATT 9dB	9 dB attenuation	**ATT 21dB**	21 dB attenuation
ATT 12dB	12 dB attenuation		

■ RIT function
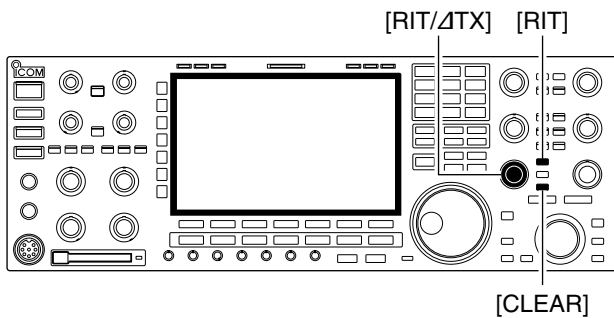
The RIT (Receive Increment Tuning) function compensates for off-frequencies of the communicating station.

The function shifts the receive frequency up to ±9.99 kHz in 10 Hz steps without moving the transmit frequency.

[RIT/⊿TX] [RIT]

[CLEAR]

① Push [RIT] to turn the RIT function ON and OFF.
  • "RIT" and the shifting frequency appear when the function is ON.
② Rotate the [RIT/⊿TX] control.
  • Push [CLEAR] for 1 sec. to reset the RIT frequency.
  • Push [CLEAR] momentarily to reset the RIT frequency when the quick RIT/⊿TX clear function is ON. (p. 12-17)
  • Push [RIT] for 1 sec. to add the shift frequency to the operating frequency.

◇ RIT monitor function

[XFC]
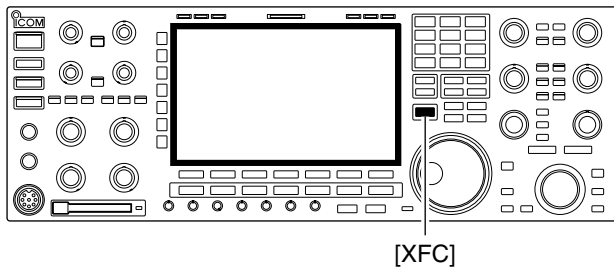
When the RIT function is ON, pushing and holding [XFC] allows you to monitor the operating frequency directly (RIT is temporarily cancelled).

✔ For your convenience— Calculate function
The shift frequency of the RIT function can be added/subtracted to the displayed frequency.

➥ While displaying the RIT shift frequency, push [RIT] for 1 sec.

■ AGC function

[AGC] control for main   [AGC] control for sub

[AGC VR] for main   [AGC VR] for sub   [AGC]
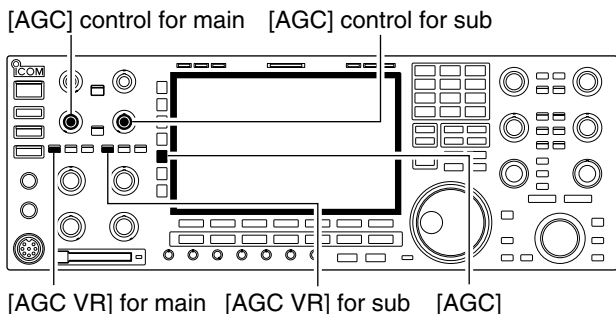
The AGC (auto gain control) controls receiver gain to produce a constant audio output level even when the received signal strength is varied by fading, etc.

The transceiver has 3 AGC characteristics (time constant; fast, mid, slow) for non-FM mode.

The FM mode AGC time constant is fixed as 'FAST' (0.1 sec.) and AGC time constant cannot be selected.

◇ Selecting the preset value

① Select non-FM mode.
② Push [AGC] several times to select AGC fast, AGC medium (MID) or AGC slow.

◇ Adjusting the AGC time constant

① Select non-FM mode.
② Push [AGC VR], then rotate [AGC] control to adjust the AGC time constant.
  • [AGC VR] indicator above the switch lights green.

◇ Setting the AGC time constant preset value

	SSB	CW	RTTY	PSK	AM	FM
FAST	0.3	0.1	0.1	0.1	3.0	0.1
MID	2.0	0.5	0.5	0.5	5.0	---
SLOW	6.0	1.2	1.2	1.2	7.0	---

(sec.)

DEF

• Selectable AGC time constant   (unit: sec.)

Mode	Default	Selectable AGC time constant
SSB	0.3 (FAST) 2.0 (MID) 6.0 (SLOW)	0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.5, 0.8, 1.2, 1.6, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0
CW	0.1 (FAST) 0.5 (MID) 1.2 (SLOW)	0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.5, 0.8, 1.2, 1.6, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0
RTTY PSK	0.1 (FAST) 0.5 (MID) 1.2 (SLOW)	0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.5, 0.8, 1.2, 1.6, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0
AM	3.0 (FAST) 5.0 (MID) 7.0 (SLOW)	0.3, 0.5, 0.8, 1.2, 1.6, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0
FM	0.1 (FAST)	Fixed

① Select the desired mode except FM mode.
② Push [AGC] for 1 sec. to enter AGC set mode.
③ Push [AGC] several times to select FAST time constant.
④ Rotate the main dial to set the desired time constant for 'AGC FAST.'
  • AGC time constant can be set between 0.1 to 8.0 sec. (depends on mode) or turned OFF.
  • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select a default value.
⑤ Push [AGC] to select medium time constant.
⑥ Rotate the main dial to set the desired time constant for 'AGC MID.'
  • AGC time constant can be set between 0.1 to 8.0 sec. (depends on mode) or turned OFF.
  • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select a default value.
⑦ Push [AGC] to select slow time constant.
⑧ Rotate the main dial to set the desired time constant for 'AGC SLOW.'
  • AGC time constant can be set between 0.1 to 8.0 sec. (depends on mode) or turned OFF.
  • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select a default value.
⑨ Select another mode except FM. Repeat steps ③ to ⑧ if desired.
⑩ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit the AGC set mode screen.

■ Twin PBT operation

[TWIN PBT] for main   [TWIN PBT] for sub

[PBT CLEAR] for main   [PBT CLEAR] for sub

Shows filter width, shifting value and condition

General PBT (Passband Tuning) function electronically narrows the IF passband width by shifting the IF frequency to slightly outside of the IF filter passband to reject interference. This transceiver uses the DSP circuit for the PBT function. Moving both [TWIN PBT] controls to the same position shifts the IF.

➥ The LCD shows the passband width and shift frequency graphically.
➥ Push [FILTER] for 1 sec. to enter the filter set screen. Current passband width and shift frequency is displayed in the filter set screen.
➥ To set the [TWIN PBT] controls to the center positions, push [PBT CLR] for 1 sec.

The variable range depends on the passband width and mode. The edge of the variable range is half of the passband width, and PBT is adjustable in 25 or 50 Hz steps.

⚠ • [TWIN PBT] should normally be set to the center positions (PBT setting is cleared) when there is no interference.
• When PBT is used, the audio tone may be changed.
• Not available for FM mode.
• While rotating [TWIN PBT], noise may occur. This comes from the DSP unit and does not indicate an equipment malfunction.

• PBT operation example

Both controls at center position

PBT1
PBT2

IF center frequency

Cutting a lower passband

PBT1
PBT2

Passband

Interference   Desired signal

Cutting both higher and lower passbands

PBT1
PBT2

Passband

Interference   Interference
Desired signal
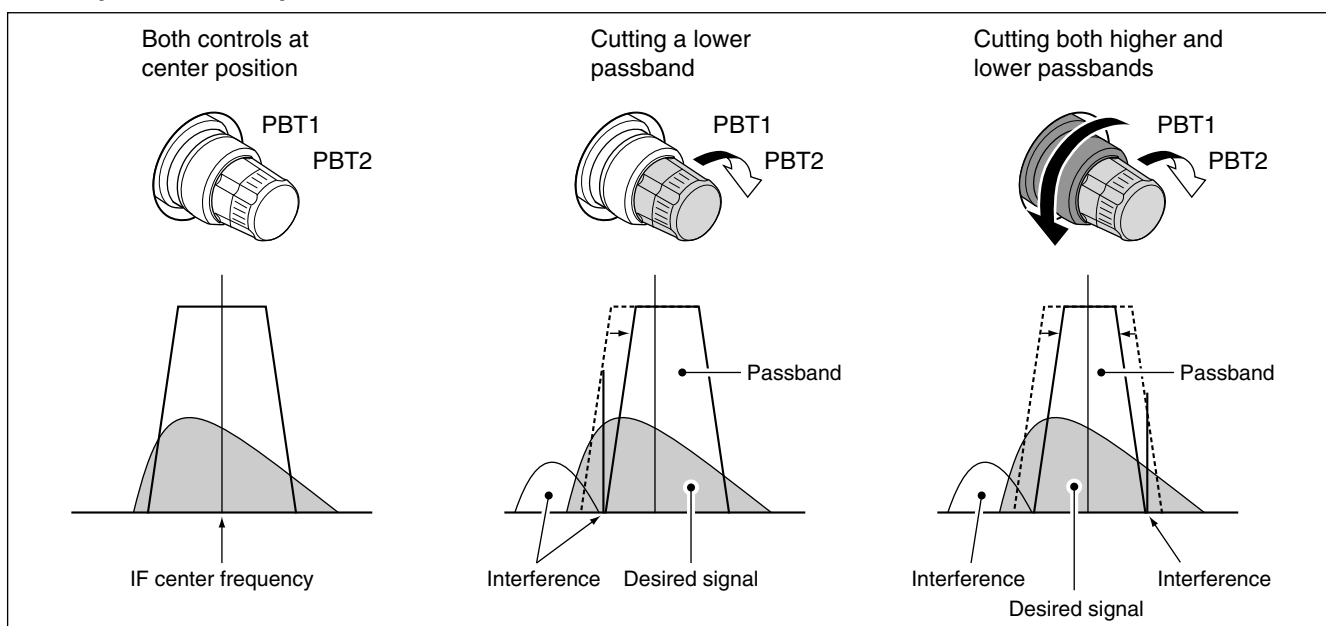
■ IF filter selection
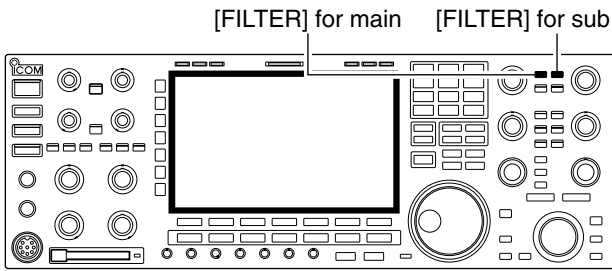
The transceiver has 3 passband width IF filters for each mode.

For SSB, CW and PSK modes, the passband width can be set within 50 to 3600 Hz in 50 or 100 Hz steps. A total of 41 passband widths are available.

For RTTY mode, the passband width can be set within 50 to 2700 Hz in 50 or 100 Hz steps. A total of 32 passband widths are available.

For AM mode, the passband width can be set within 200 Hz to 10 kHz in 200 Hz steps. A total of 50 passband widths are available.

For FM mode, the passband width is fixed and 3 passband widths are available.

The filter selection is automatically memorized in each mode.
The PBT shift frequencies are automatically memorized in each filter.

◇ IF filter selection

① Select the desired mode.
② Push [FILTER] several times to select the IF filter 1, 2 or 3.
  • The selected passband width and filter number is displayed in the LCD.

◇ Filter passband width setting (except FM mode)

① Push [FILTER] for 1 sec. to enter filter set screen.
② Select any mode except FM.
  • Passband widths for FM modes are fixed and cannot be set.
③ Push [FILTER] several times to select the desired IF filter.
④ While pushing [F-1•BW], rotate the main dial to set the desired passband width.
  • In SSB, CW and PSK modes, the passband width can be set within the following range.
    50 to 500 Hz   50 Hz steps
    600 to 3600 Hz   100 Hz steps
  • In RTTY mode, the passband width can be set within the following range.
    50 to 500 Hz   50 Hz steps
    600 to 2700 Hz   100 Hz steps
  • In AM mode, the passband width can be set within the following range.
    200 Hz to 10 kHz 200 Hz steps
  • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default value.
⑤ Repeat steps ② to ④ if desired.
⑥ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit filter set screen.

The PBT shift frequencies are cleared when the passband width is changed.

This filter set screen graphically displays the PBT shift frequencies and CW pitch operations.

◇ Roofing filter selection

The IC-7800 has 6 kHz roofing filter. The roofing filter allows you an interference reduction from nearby strong signals.

①Push [FILTER] for 1 sec. to enter filter set screen.
②Select any mode except FM.
③Push [F-6•ROOFING] to select the desired filter from 15 kHz (regular 1st IF filter) and 6 kHz (roofing filter).
　• Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select a default value.
④Push [EXIT•SET] to exit filter set screen.

◇ DSP filter shape
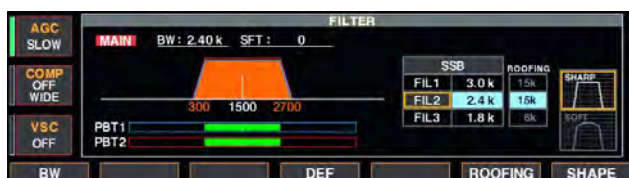
The type of DSP filter shape for each SSB, SSB data and CW can be selected independently from soft and sharp.

①Push [FILTER] for 1 sec. to enter filter set screen.
②Select SSB, SSB data or CW mode.
③Push [F-7•SHAPE] to select the desired filter shape from soft and sharp.
④Push [EXIT•SET] to exit filter set screen.

The filter shape can be set for each band (HF and 50 MHz bands), mode, as well as the passband width setting (CW only) independently as your default setting in filter shape set mode.

◇ Filter shape set mode

The type of DSP filter shape for each SSB, SSB data and CW can be selected independently from soft and sharp.

①Push [FILTER] for 1 sec. to enter filter set screen.
②Push [F-7•SHAPE] for 1 sec. to enter filter shape set mode.
③Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired item.
④Rotate the main dial to select the filter shape from soft and sharp.
⑤Push [EXIT/SET] to exit filter shape set mode.

HF SSB (600Hz －)	SHARP
Select the filter shape for SSB mode in HF bands.	The set filter shape is automatically used only when the IF filter that 600 Hz or wider setting is set.

SSB-D (600Hz －)	SHARP
Select the filter shape for SSB data mode in HF bands.	The set filter shape is automatically used only when the IF filter that 600 Hz or wider setting is set.

◇ **Filter shape set mode (continued)**

CW (– 500Hz) SHARP	
Select the filter shape for CW mode in HF bands.	The set filter shape is automatically used only when the IF filter that 500 Hz or narrower setting is set.

CW (600Hz –) SHARP	
Select the filter shape for CW mode in HF bands.	The set filter shape is automatically used only when the IF filter that 600 Hz or wider setting is set.

50M SSB (600Hz –) SOFT	
Select the filter shape for SSB mode in 50 MHz band.	The set filter shape is automatically used only when the IF filter that 600 Hz or wider setting is set.

SSB–D (600Hz –) SHARP	
Select the filter shape for SSB data mode in 50 MHz band.	The set filter shape is automatically used only when the IF filter that 600 Hz or wider setting is set.

CW (– 500Hz) SHARP	
Select the filter shape for CW mode in 50 MHz band.	The set filter shape is automatically used only when the IF filter that 500 Hz or narrower setting is set.

CW (600Hz –) SHARP	
Select the filter shape for CW mode in 50 MHz band.	The set filter shape is automatically used only when the IF filter that 600 Hz or wider setting is set.

■ Dualwatch operation

Dualwatch monitors 2 frequencies simultaneously.
The IC-7800 has 2 independent receiver circuits to allow you to a dualwatch even in different frequency band and mode.

[MAIN] [SUB] [SPLIT]

[AF] for sub [CHANGE] [DUALWATCH] Sub dial
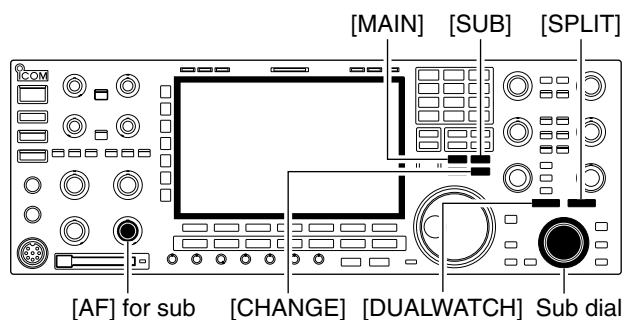
• Split frequency operation during dualwatch

① Set the desired frequency and mode into the main band.
② Push [DUALWATCH].
   • "**DUAL-W**" appears.
   • Pushing [DUALWATCH] for 1 sec., the sub band is equalized at the same time. This quick dualwatch function can be turned OFF in set mode. (p. 12-13)
③ Rotate the sub dial to set the desired frequency.
④ Push [SUB] to enables the sub band access when changing the frequency band, operating mode, etc. in sub band.
   • Push [MAIN] for the main band access.
⑤ Rotate [AF] for sub band to adjust the sub band audio level.
⑥ To transmit on the sub band readout, push [CHANGE] or [SPLIT].

NOTE:
• Beat may be sound according to the set frequency combination, such as 3.5 MHz and 7 MHz band's frequencies.
• Receiver sensitivity will be decreased when the same frequency band and the same antenna are selected during dualwatch.
• The RIT function can be used for the main readout only.
• The ⊿TX function can be used for the transmit readout (main readout when the split function OFF; sub readout when the split function ON).

■ Noise blanker
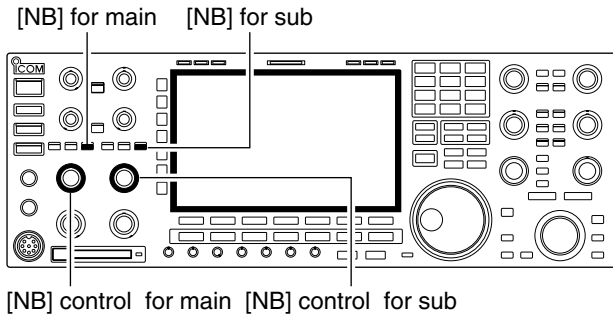
The noise blanker eliminates pulse-type noise such as from car ignitions. The noise blanker is not available for FM mode.

① Push [NB] to turn the noise blanker function ON and OFF.
  • [NB] indicator above their switch lights green.
② Rotate [NB] control to adjust the noise blanker threshold level.

[NB] for main   [NB] for sub

[NB] control for main   [NB] control for sub

///When using the noise blanker, received signals may be distorted if they are excessively strong or the noise type is different. Turn the noise blanker OFF, or rotate [NB] control to a shallow position in such case.

◇ NB set mode
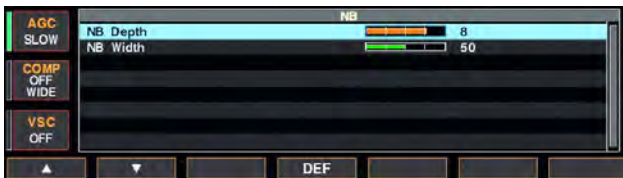
To deal with various type of noises, attenuation level and noise width can be set in NB set mode.

① Push [NB] for 1 sec. to enter NB set mode.
② Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired item.
③ Rotate the main dial to set the desired level or value.
  • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select a default value.
④ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit filter shape set mode.

NB Depth	8

Set the noise attenuation level within 1 to 10.

NB Width	50

Set the noise pulse width within 1 to 100.

■ Noise reduction
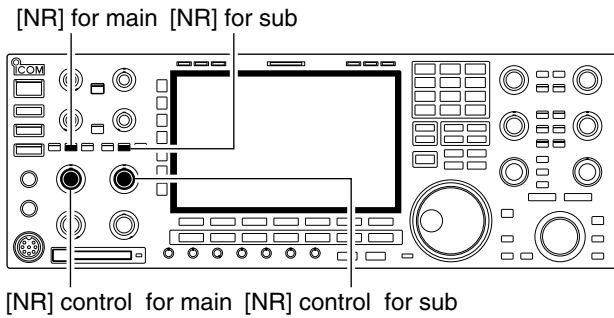
The noise reduction function reduces noise components and picks out desired signals which are buried in noise. The received signals are converted to digital signals and then the desired signals are separated from the noise.

[NR] for main   [NR] for sub

[NR] control for main [NR] control for sub

① Push the [NR] to turn the noise reduction ON.
   • [NR] indicator above their switch lights green.
② Rotate the [NR] control to adjust the noise reduction level.
③ Push the [NR] switch to turn the noise reduction OFF.
   • [NR] indicator lights off.

⁄⁄ Deep rotation of the [NR] control results in audio
⁄⁄ signal masking or distortion. Set the [NR] control for
⁄⁄ maximum readability.

■ Dial lock function

[LOCK] indicator for main   [LOCK] indicator for sub

[LOCK] for main   [LOCK] for sub
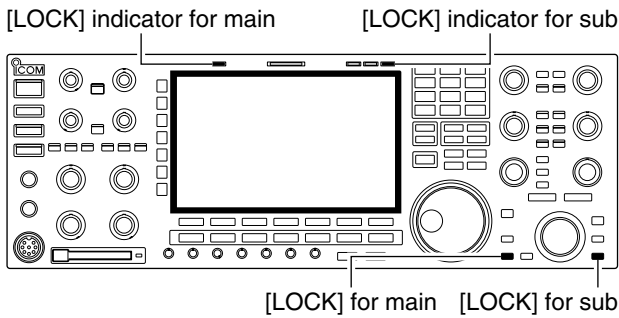
The dial lock function prevents changes by accidental movement of the main dial. The lock function electronically locks the dial.

➥ Push [LOCK] to toggle the dial lock function ON and OFF.
   • The [LOCK] indicator lights when the dial lock function is in use.

■ Notch function

[NOTCH] control for main   [NOTCH] control for sub
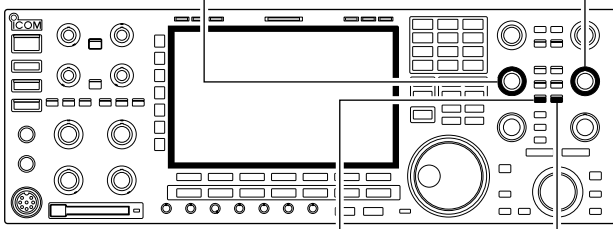
[NOTCH] for main [NOTCH] for sub

This transceiver has auto and manual notch functions. The auto notch function automatically attenuates more than 3 beat tones, tuning signals, etc., even if they are moving. The manual notch can be set to attenuate a frequency via the [NOTCH] control.
The auto notch can be used in SSB, AM and FM modes.
The manual notch can be used in SSB, CW, RTTY, PSK and AM modes.

• Auto notch indication

• Manual notch indication

➥ Push [NOTCH] to toggle the notch function between auto, manual and OFF in SSB and AM modes.
➥ Push [NOTCH] to turn the manual notch function ON and OFF in CW mode.
➥ Push [NOTCH] to turn the auto notch function ON and OFF in FM mode.
  • [NOTCH] indicator above their switch lights green.
  • Push [NOTCH] for 1 sec. to select the notch filter width for manual notch from wide, middle and narrow.
  • Set to attenuate a frequency for manual notch via the [NOTCH] control.
  • "AN" appears when auto notch is in use.
  • "MN" appears when manual notch is in use.

While operating the manual notch, noise may be heard. This comes from the DSP unit and does not indicate an equipment malfunction.

■ Digital selector

[DIGI-SEL] control for main [DIGI-SEL] control for sub
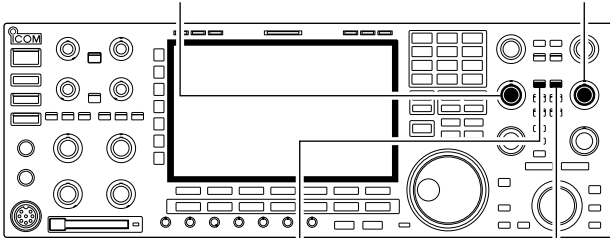
[DIGI-SEL] for main [DIGI-SEL] for sub

The digital selector manually adjusts the center frequency of the automatic pre-selector.

The automatic pre-selector filters the desired signal only and eliminates intermodulation from another bands strong signals at the RF stage.

The automatic pre-selector that operates in conjunction with the operating frequency, follows the change in operating frequency at the minimum kHz steps.

① Push [DIGI-SEL] to turn the digital selector ON and OFF.
  • [DIGI-SEL] indicator above their switch lights green.
② Rotate [DIGI-SEL] control to adjust the center frequency.

NOTE:
• When rotating the main dial (and sub dial during the dualwatch or split function) while the digital selector is activated, mechanical noise will be heard due to the switching noise from internal relays.
• The preamp (P.AMP1 or P.AMP2) cannot be used while the digital selector is activated.

FUNCTIONS FOR TRANSMIT   Section **6**

■ VOX function

The VOX (Voice-Operated Transmission) function switches between transmit and receive with your voice. This function provides an opportunity to input log entries into your computer, etc., while operating.

◇ Using the VOX function
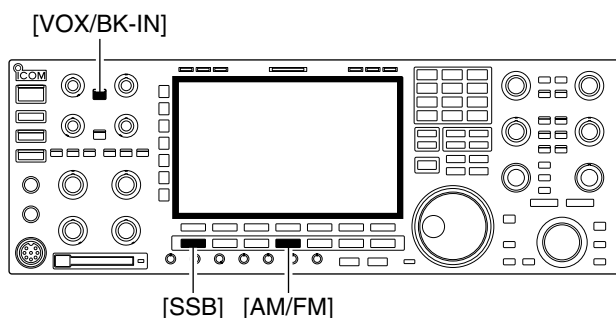
[VOX/BK-IN]

[SSB] [AM/FM]

① Select a phone mode (SSB, AM, FM).
② Push [VOX/BK-IN] to turn the VOX function ON or OFF.
   • "VOX" appears while the VOX is in use.
   • [VOX/BK-IN] indicator above this switch lights green.

◇ Adjusting the VOX function

[VOX/BK-IN] [SSB] [AM/FM]

[VOX GAIN] [ANTI VOX]
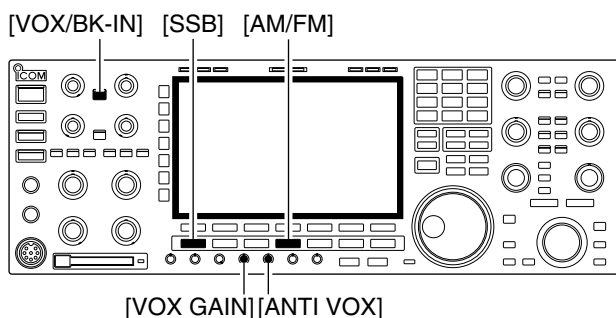
① Select a phone mode (SSB, AM, FM).
② Push [VOX/BK-IN] to turn VOX function ON.
③ While speaking into the microphone with your normal voice level, rotate [VOX GAIN] to the point where the transceiver is continuously transmitting.
④ During receive, rotate [ANTI VOX] to the point where the transceiver does not switching to transmit with the receive audio from the speaker.
⑤ Adjust the VOX delay and the VOX voice delay in VOX set mode, if necessary.

◇ VOX set mode

AGC SLOW		VOX	
COMP OFF WIDE	VOX Delay	■	0.2s
VSC OFF	VOX Voice Delay	Short	
▲	▼	DEF	
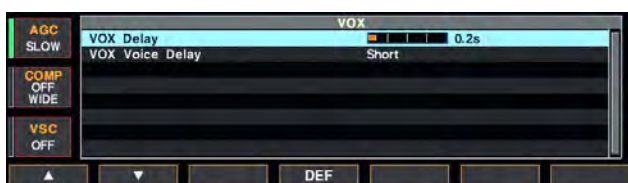
① Push [VOX/BK-IN] for 1 sec. to enter VOX set mode.
② Select the VOX gain item using [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼].
③ Rotate the main dial to the desired set value or condition.
   • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select a default value.
④ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit VOX set mode.

VOX Delay   ■   0.2s

Set the VOX delay for a convenient interval before returning to receive within 0 to 2.0 sec. range.

VOX Voice Delay   **Short**

Set the VOX voice delay to prevent mis-transmission of your voice when switching to transmit.
Short, Mid., Long and OFF settings are available.

⁄⁄ When using the VOX voice delay, turn the TX monitor function OFF. The transmission audio will be echoed.

■ Break-in function

The break-in function is used in CW mode to automatically toggle the transceiver between transmit and receive when keying. The IC-7800 is capable for full break-in or semi break-in.

◇ Semi break-in operation
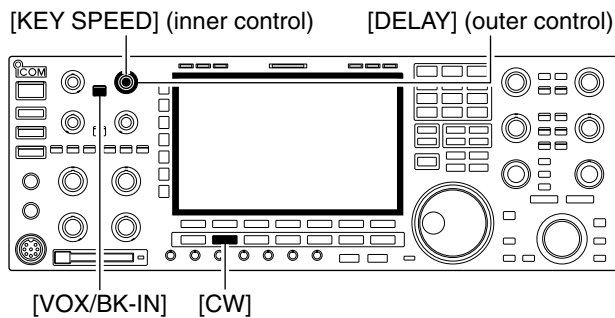
During semi break-in operation, the transceiver selects transmit when keying, then automatically returns to receive after a pre-set time from when you stop keying.

[KEY SPEED] (inner control)   [DELAY] (outer control)

① Push [CW] to select CW or CW-R mode.
② Push [VOX/BK-IN] several times to turn the semi break-in function ON.
  • "BK IN" appears.
③ Rotate [DELAY] to set the break-in delay time (the delay from transmit to receive).

[VOX/BK-IN]   [CW]

▨ When using a paddle, rotate [KEY SPEED] to adjust the keying speed.

◇ Full break-in operation

During full break-in operation, the transceiver automatically selects transmit while keying and returns to receive immediately after keying is finished.

① Push [CW] to select CW or CW-R mode.
② Push [VOX/BK-IN] several times to turn the full break-in function ON.
  • "F-BK IN" appears.

▨ When using a paddle, rotate [KEY SPEED] to adjust the keying speed.
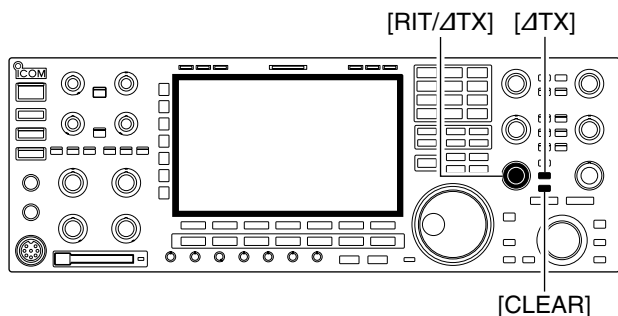
■ ⊿TX function

The ⊿TX function shifts the transmit frequency up to ±9.999 kHz in 1 Hz steps (10 Hz steps when cancelling the 1 Hz step readout) without moving the receive frequency.
• See ❾❸ on p. 1-11 for function description.

[RIT/⊿TX] [⊿TX]

[CLEAR]

① Push [⊿TX].
  • "⊿TX" appears.
② Rotate [RIT/⊿TX].
③ To reset the ⊿TX frequency, push [CLEAR] for 1 sec.
  • Push [CLEAR] momentarily to reset the RIT frequency when the quick RIT/⊿TX clear function is ON. (p. 12-1)
④ To cancel the ⊿TX function, push [⊿TX] again.
  • "⊿TX" disappears.
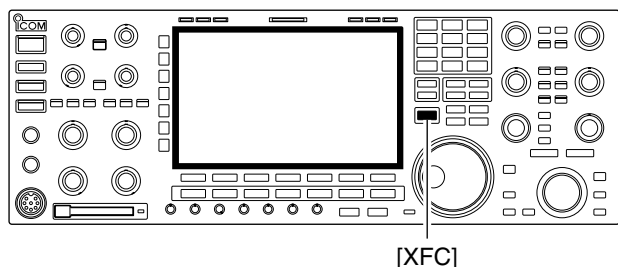
◇ ⊿TX monitor function

When the ⊿TX function is ON, pushing and holding [XFC] allows you to monitor the operating frequency directly (⊿TX is temporarily cancelled).

[XFC]

✔ **For your convenience— Calculate function**
The shift frequency of the ⊿TX function can be added/subtracted to the displayed frequency.

➥ While displaying the ⊿TX shift frequency, push [⊿TX] for 1 sec.

■ Monitor function
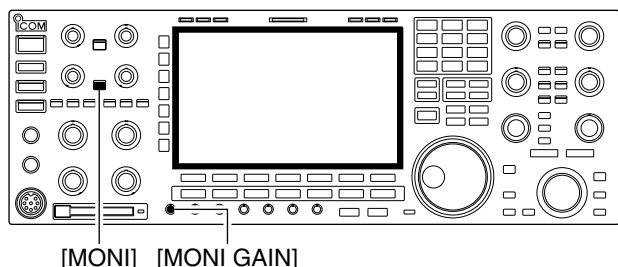
The monitor function allows you to monitor your transmit IF signals in any mode through the speaker. Use this to check voice characteristics while adjusting SSB transmit tones. (p. 12-4) The CW sidetone functions regardless of the [MONI] switch setting.

① Push [MONI] to switch the monitor function ON and OFF.
  • [MONI] indicator above this switch lights green.
② Rotate [MONI GAIN] for the clearest audio output while pushing [PTT] and speaking into the microphone.

NOTE: When using the VOX voice delay, turn the monitor function OFF. The transmission audio will be echoed.

[MONI] [MONI GAIN]

■ Transmit filter width setting (SSB only)

[COMP]

The transmit filter width for SSB mode can be selected from wide, middle and narrow.
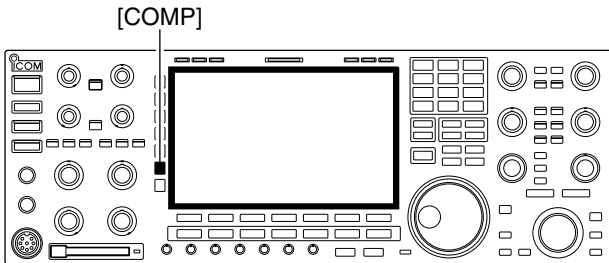
➥ During USB or LSB mode selection, push [COMP] for 1 sec. several times to select the desired transmit filter width from wide, middle and narrow.
  • The filter functions regardless of the speech compressor use.
  • The following filters are specified as the default. Each of the filter width can be re-set in level set mode. (p. 12-5)
    WIDE   : 100 Hz to 2.9 kHz
    MID   : 300 Hz to 2.7 kHz
    NAR   : 500 Hz to 2.5 kHz

■ Speech compressor (SSB only)

[MIC] [METER] [COMP]

[COMP] control [DRIVE]

COMP zone

The speech compressor increases average RF output power, improving signal strength and readability in SSB mode only.
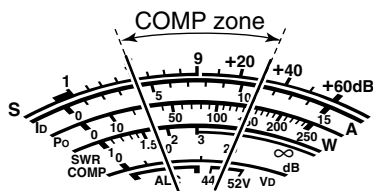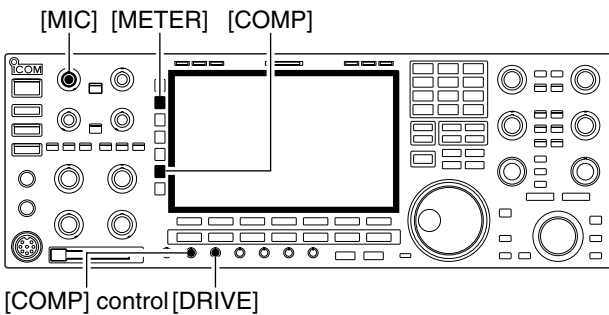
① Select USB or LSB mode and adjust [MIC] to a suitable level.
  • Push [METER] several times to select the ALC meter for microphone gain adjustment.
② Push [COMP] to turn the speech compressor ON.
③ Push [METER] once to select the COMP meter.
④ While speaking into the microphone, rotate [COMP] control, so that the COMP meter reads within the COMP zone (10 to 20 dB range) with your normal voice level.

  ⁄⁄ When the COMP meter peaks exceed the COMP ⁄⁄ zone, your transmitted voice may be distorted.

⑤ Push [METER] 5 times to select the ALC meter.
⑥ While speaking into the microphone, rotate [DRIVE], so that the ALC meter reads within the 30 to 50% range of the ALC zone with your normal voice level.

✔ **For your convenience**
Push [METER] for 1 sec. to display the multi-function meter that can check the ALC and COMP level at a glance.

■ Split frequency operation

[SPLIT] indicator [M=S] [CHANGE] [SPLIT]

[XFC] Main dial Sub dial
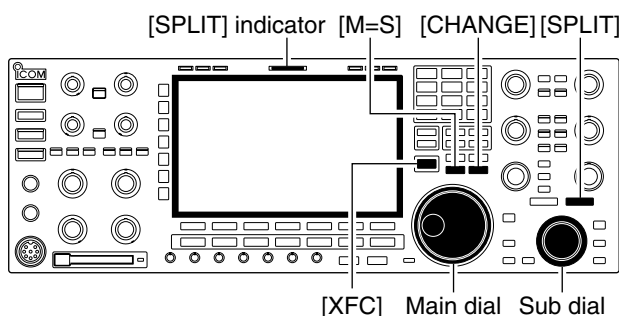
• When the split function ON

• When [XFC] is pushed

• The split frequency operation is ready

Split frequency operation allows you to transmit and receive in the same mode on two different frequencies. The split frequency operation is basically performed using 2 frequencies on the main and sub readouts.

The following is an example of setting 21.290 MHz for receiving and 21.310 MHz for transmitting.

① Set 21.290 MHz (USB) in VFO mode.
② Push [SPLIT] momentarily, then push [M=S] for 1 sec.
   • The quick split function is much more convenient for selecting the transmit frequency. See the next section for details.
   • The equalized transmit frequency and "SPLIT" appear on the LCD.
   • [SPLIT] indicator lights.
   • "TX" appears to show the transmit frequency readout.
③ Set the transmit frequency to 21.310 MHz with the one of following ways.
   ➡ Rotate the main dial while pushing [XFC].
   ➡ Rotate the sub dial.
      • The transmit frequency can be monitored while pushing [XFC] or using dualwatch.
④ Now you can receive on 21.290 MHz and transmit on 21.310 MHz.

To change the transmit and receive frequencies, push [CHANGE] to exchange the main and sub readouts.

✔ CONVENIENT
• Direct shift frequency input
The shift frequency can be entered directly.
① Push [F-INP•ENT].
② Enter the desired shift frequency with the digit keys.
   • 1 kHz to 1 MHz can be set.
   • When you require a minus shift direction, push [GENE•.] in advance.
③ Push [SPLIT].
   • The shift frequency is input in the sub readout and the split function is turned ON.
   [Example]
   To transmit on 1 kHz higher frequency:
   - Push [F-INP•ENT], [1.8•1] then [SPLIT].
   To transmit on 3 kHz lower frequency:
   - Push [F-INP•ENT], [GENE•.], [7•3] then [SPLIT].

• Split lock function
Accidentally releasing [XFC] while rotating the main dial changes the receive frequency. To prevent this, use both the split lock and dial lock functions to change the transmit frequency only. The split lock function cancels the dial lock function while pushing [XFC] during split frequency operation.

The dial lock's effectiveness during split frequency operation can be selected in the set mode for both receive and transmit frequencies; or only the receive frequency. (p. 12-14)

■ Quick split function

When you find a DX station, an important consideration is how to set the split frequency.

When you push the [SPLIT] switch for 1 sec., split frequency operation is turned ON, the sub readout is equalized to the main readout frequency and enters standby for transmit frequency input.

This shortens the time needed to start split frequency operation.

The quick split function is ON by default. For your convenience, it can be turned OFF in set mode. (p. 12-14) In this case, the [SPLIT] switch does not equalize the main and sub readout frequencies.

[SPLIT] indicator   [XFC]   [SPLIT]

Main dial
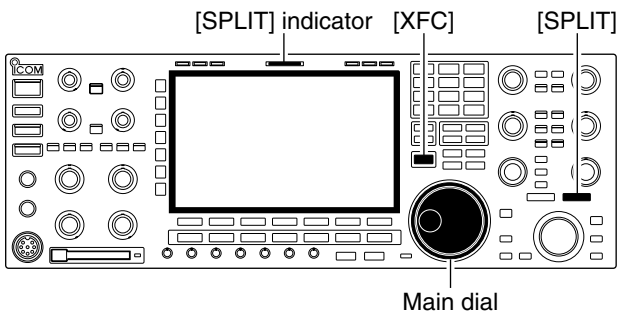
① Suppose you are operating at 21.290 MHz (USB) in VFO mode.
② Push [SPLIT] for 1 sec.
   • Split frequency operation is turned ON.
   • The sub readout is equalized to the main readout frequency.
   • " F-INP " indicator appears and the sub readout enters standby for transmit frequency input.
③ Enter the desired offset frequency from the keypad then push [SPLIT], or set the transmit frequency with the main dial while pushing [XFC], or with the sub dial.
   • " F-INP " indicator disappears when [XFC] is pushed or the main/sub dial is rotated.
   • Offset frequency setting with the keypad— example
     To transmit on 1 kHz higher frequency:
       - Push [F-INP•ENT], [1.8•1] then [SPLIT].
     To transmit on 3 kHz lower frequency:
       - Push [F-INP•ENT], [GENE•.], [7•3] then [SPLIT].

◇ Split lock function

The split lock function is convenient for changing only the transmit frequency. When the split lock function is not used, accidentally releasing [XFC] while rotating the main dial, changes the receive frequency. The split lock function is ON by default, but can be turned OFF in set mode. (p. 12-14)

[LOCK] indicator for main   [LOCK] indicator for sub

[XFC]   Main dial   [LOCK]   [LOCK]
                    for main for sub
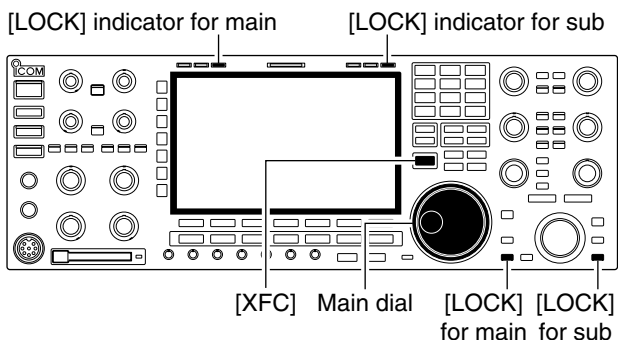
① While split frequency operation is ON, push [LOCK] for both main and sub band to activate the split lock function.
② While pushing [XFC], rotate the main dial to change the transmit frequency.
   • If you accidentally release [XFC] while rotating the main dial, the receive frequency does NOT change.

VOICE RECORDER FUNCTIONS   Section   7

■ About digital voice recorder

The IC-7800 has digital voice memories, up to 4 channels for transmit, and up to 20 channels for receive.
A maximum message length of 30 sec. can be recorded into a receive channel and the total message length of up to 209 sec., and a total message length of up to 99 sec. can be recorded in transmit channels.

Providing a transmission memory is very convenient for repeated CQ and number transmissions at contest times, as well as when making consecutive calls in DX'pedition.

① Select any mode.
② Push [F-2•VOICE] to display voice recorder screen.
③ Push [EXIT/SET] to display voice recorder menu.
④ Push [F-1•PLAY] or [F-2•MIC REC] to select the desired memory channel screen, then records audio or playback the contents as described below.
⑤ Push [EXIT/SET] twice to exit voice recorder screen.

[F-1] [F-2] [REC] [PLAY] [EXIT/SET]
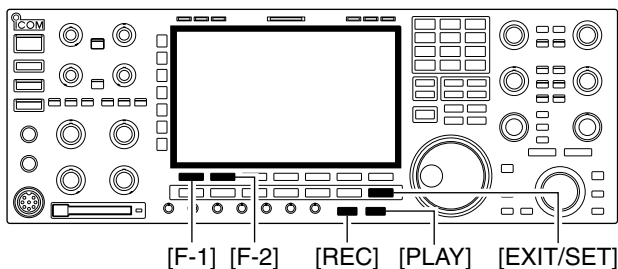
• **Example— When [REC] is pushed for 1sec.**

Push [REC] for 1 sec.   Push [REC] momentarily
(starts recording)   (stops recording)

Push [REC] for 1 sec.   Push [REC] momentarily
(starts recording)   (stops recording)

20 sec.

Push [REC] momentarily within 30 sec. after pushing [REC] for 1 sec., records the all contents.

These contents won't be recorded.

30 sec.

Push [REC] momentarily after passing 30 sec. from pushing [REC] for 1 sec., records the 30 sec. before canceling the record.

• **Example— When [REC] is pushed momentarily**

Push [REC] momentarily   Push [REC] momentarily
(starts recording)   (starts recording)

NOTE: The contents will be recorded into an independent memory channels automatically.

15 sec.   3 sec.
(default)

Push [REC] momentarily records the contents of the previous 15 sec.*

When [REC] is pushed momentarily again within 15 sec.* from the last [REC] operation, all the contents between [REC] operations will be recorded.

*The recording time period can be changed with "Normal Rec Time" in voice set mode (p. 7-9).

• **Playing back the all contents in a channel**

Push [PLAY / F-2] momentarily.

Or, push [PLAY] for 1 sec.

30 sec. (max.)
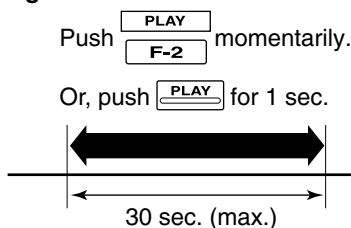
• **Playing back the end of 5 sec.* in a channel**

Push [PLAY] momentarily.

Not playing back   Play back (5 sec.; default)
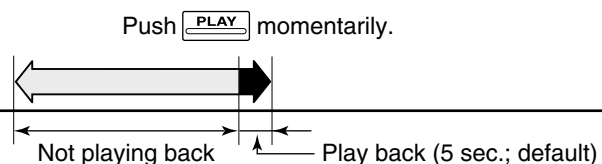
*The playing back time period can be changed with "Short Play Time" in voice set mode (p. 7-9).

■ Recording a received audio

Up to 20 channels of receive voice memories are available in the IC-7800. And the total audio length of up to 209 sec. can be recorded in receive channels. However, the maximum recordable length into a channel is 30 sec.

This voice recorder records not only the received audio, but also the information that the set operating frequency, mode, and the recording time for your future reference as the memory names.

◇ Basic recording

[F-2•VOICE]   [REC] [EXIT/SET] [F-7•T/R]

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Select the desired mode.
③ Push [F-2•VOICE] to call up the voice recorder screen.
  • Previously selected screen, TX or RX memory, is displayed. If the TX memory channel (T1–T4) appears, push [F-7•T/R] to select RX memory channel.
④ Push [REC] for 1 sec. to start recording.
  • The recording timer counts down.
  • The operating frequency, mode and current time are programmed as the memory names automatically.
⑤ Push [REC] momentarily to stop recording.

  IMPORTANT!
  Push [REC] to stop recording before, or when 30 sec. has passed from the start of recording.
  The voice recorder memory records the 30 sec. (max.) of audio before [REC] is pushed.
  For example, when recording 40 sec. of audio, the first 10 sec. audio will be over-recorded with the last 10 sec., so that the total of audio recorded is 30 sec. only.
  When you records a 21st audio, or when the total audio length exceeds 209 sec., the oldest recorded audio is automatically erased to make room for the new audio.

⑥ Push [EXIT/SET] twice to exit the voice recorder screen.

NOTE: When transmit (or [PTT] is pushed) while recording, no audio will be recorded.

◇ One-touch recording
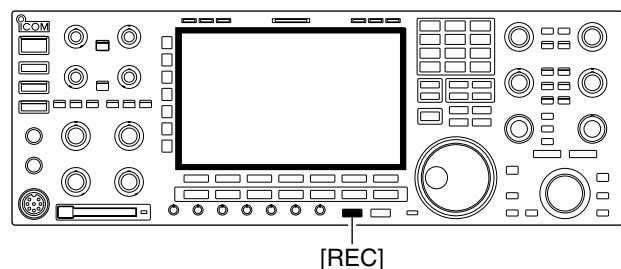
To record the receiving signal contents immediately, one-touch voice recording is available.

➥ Push [REC] momentarily to records the previous 15 sec. audio.
  • The recordable time period can be set in voice set mode. (p. 7-9)

[REC]

7-3

■ Playing the recorded audio

◇ Basic playing
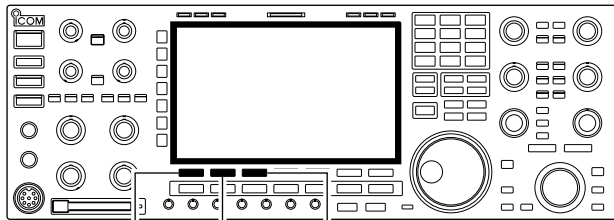
[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼] [F-3•PLAY]
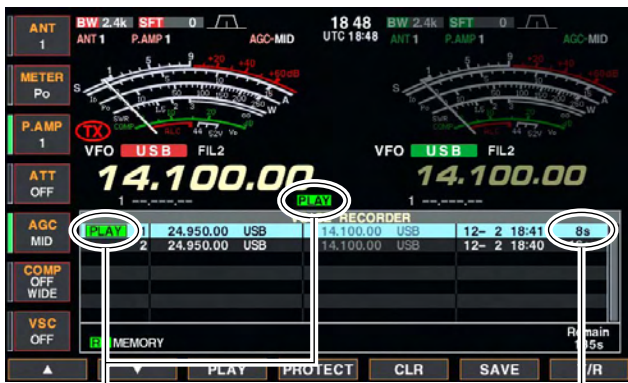
Appear   Counts down

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Push [F-2•VOICE] to call up the voice recorder screen.
  • Previously selected screen, TX or RX memory, is displayed. If the TX memory channel (T1–T4) appears, push [F-7•T/R] to select RX memory channel.
③ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired voice memory to playback.
④ Push [F-3•PLAY] to start playback.
  • "PLAY" indicators appear and the timer counts down.
⑤ Push [F-3•PLAY] again to stop playback if desired.
  • Playback is terminated automatically when all of the recorded contents in the channel are played, or after 30 sec.
⑥ Push [EXIT/SET] twice to exit the voice recorder screen.

◇ One-touch playing
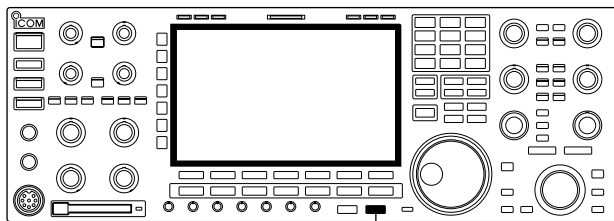
[PLAY]

The previously recorded audio in channel 1 can be playback without selecting voice recorder screen.

➡ Push [PLAY] momentarily to playback the end 5 sec. of the previously recorded audio.
  • "PLAY" indicator appears.
  • Playback is terminated automatically when all of the recorded contents in the channel are played, or after 5 sec.
  • The playback time period can be set in voice set mode. (p. 7-9)

■ Protect the recorded contents
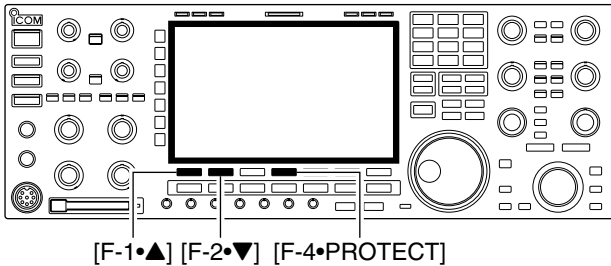
[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼] [F-4•PROTECT]

The protect function is available to protect the recorded contents from accidental erasing, such as over-record, etc.

①Call up the voice recorder screen, RX memory.
②Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired voice memory.
③Push [F-4•PROTECT] to turn the protect function ON and OFF.
• "🔒" indicator appears when the contents is protected.
④Push [EXIT/SET] twice to exit the voice recorder screen.

■ Erasing the recorded contents

[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼][F-5•CLR]
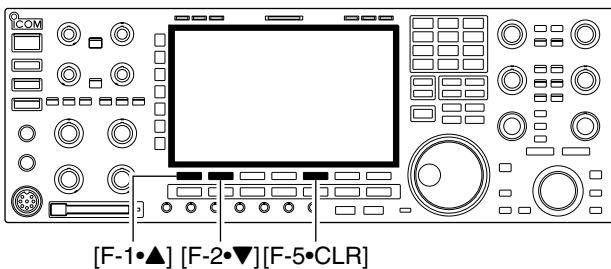
The recorded contents can be erased channel independently.

①Call up the voice recorder screen, RX memory.
②Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired voice memory to be erased.
③Push [F-5•CLR] for 1 sec. to erase the contents.
• Push [F-4•PROTECT] to release the protection in advance if necessary.
④Push [EXIT/SET] twice to exit the voice recorder screen.

■ Recording a message for transmit

To transmit a message using a voice recorder, record the desired message in advance as described below. The IC-7800 has digital voice memories for transmission, up to 4 channels and the total message length of up to 99 sec. can be recorded.

◇ Recording
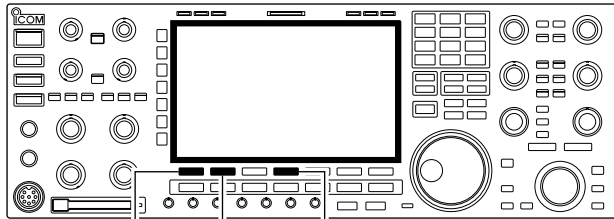
[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼] [F-4•REC]
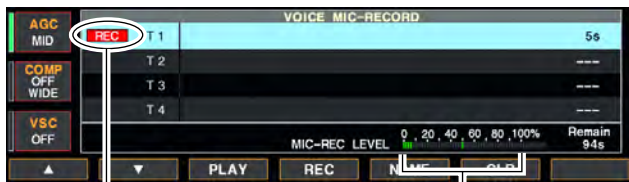
Appears   Adjust [MIC] control so that this indicator reads within 100%.

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Push [F-2•VOICE] to call up the voice recorder screen.
③ Push [EXIT/SET] to select voice recorder menu.
④ Push [F-2•MIC REC] to select the voice mic. record screen.
⑤ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired memory channel.
⑥ Push [F-4•REC] for 1 sec. to start recording.
  • " REC " indicator appears.
  • Speak into the microphone without pushing [PTT].
  • Previously recorded contents are cleared.
  • Audio output from the internal speaker is automatically muted.
⑦ While speaking into the microphone with your normal voice level, adjust the [MIC] control so that the [MIC-REC LEVEL] indicator reads within 100%.
⑧ Push [F-4•REC] momentarily to stop recording.
  • The recording is terminated automatically when the remaining time becomes 0 sec.
⑨ Push [EXIT/SET] twice to exit the voice recorder screen.

◇ Confirming a message for transmit
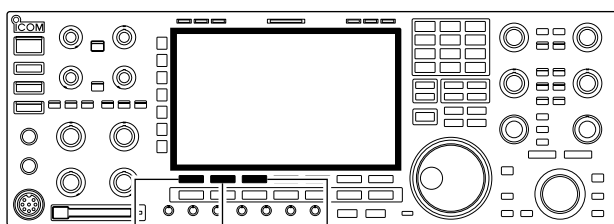
[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼] [F-3•PLAY]

① Perform the steps ① to ④ as "◇ Recording" above.
② Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired memory channel.
③ Push [F-3•PLAY] to playback the recorded contents.
  • "PLAY" indicator appears.
④ Push [F-3•PLAY] again to stop playback.
  • Playback is terminated automatically when all of the recorded contents in the channel are played.
⑤ Push [EXIT/SET] twice to exit the voice recorder screen.

■ Programming a memory name

Memory channels can be tagged with alphanumeric names of up to 20 characters each.

Capital letters, small letters, numerals, some symbols (! # $ % & ¥ ? " ' ` ^ + − ✳ / . , : ; = < > ( ) [ ] { } | _ ˜ @) and spaces can be used. (See the table below.)

[ABC]/[abc] [123]/[Symbol] [F-3•DEL] Keypad

[F-1•◀] [F-2•▶] [F-4•SPACE] [F-7•T1..T4]

① Record a message as described in page 7-6.
② During the voice mic. record screen indication, push [F-5•NAME] to enter memory name edit condition.
  • A cursor appears and blinks.
③ Push [F-7•T1..T4] several times to select the desired voice memory.
④ Input the desired character by rotating the main dial or by pushing the band key for number input.
  • Push [ABC] or [abc] to toggle capital and small letters.
  • Push [123] or [Symbol] to toggle numerals and symbols.
  • Push [F-1•◀] or [F-2•▶] for cursor movement.
  • Push [F-3•DEL] to delete the selected character.
  • Push [F-4•SPACE] to input a space.
  • Pushing the transceiver's keypad, [0]–[9], can also enter numerals.
⑤ Push [EXIT/SET] to input and set the name.
  • The cursor disappears.
⑥ Repeat steps ③ to ⑤ to program another voice memory's name, if desired.
⑦ Push [EXIT/SET] twice to exit the voice recorder screen.

• Voice memory name editing example

• Usable characters

Key selection	Editable characters
ABC	A to Z (capital letters)
abc	a to z (small letters)
123	0 to 9 (numbers)
Symbol	! # $ % & ¥ ? " ' ` ^ + − ✳ / . , : ; = < > ( ) [ ] { }	_ ˜ @

■ Sending a recorded message
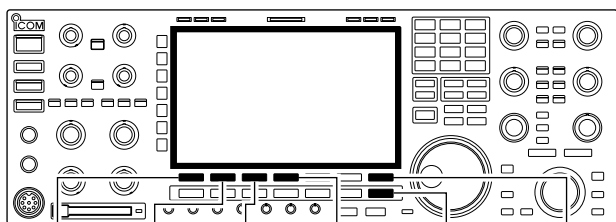
[F-1•T1] [F-2•T2] [F-3•T3] [F-4•T4] [EXIT/SET] [F-7•T/R]
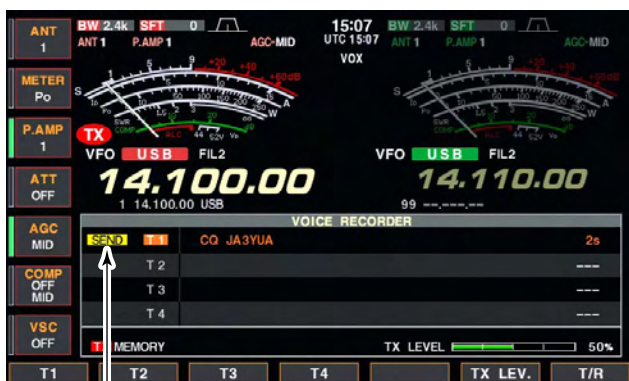
Appears

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Select a phone mode by pushing [SSB] or [AM/FM].
③ Push [F-2•VOICE] to call up the voice recorder screen.
  • If the receive voice memory channel appears, push [F-7•T/R] to select TX memory channel (T1–T4).
④ Push the desired memory channel switch, [F-1•T1] to [F-4•T4], momentarily to transmit the contents.
  • The transceiver transmits automatically.
  • " SEND " indicator appears and the memory timer counts down.
  • The transmitting contents are sound from the speaker as the default. This can be turned OFF in voice set mode. (p. 7-9)
⑤ Push the selected memory channel switch, [F-1•T1] to [F-4•T4], again to stop, if desired.
  • The transceiver returns to receive automatically when all of the recorded contents in the channel are transmitted.
⑥ Push [EXIT/SET] twice to exit the voice memory screen.

✔ For your information
When an external keypad is connected to [EXT KEY-PAD], the recorded message, T1–T4, can be transmitted without opening the voice recorder screen.
See page 2-6 for details.

◇ Transmit level setting

[F-7•T/R]
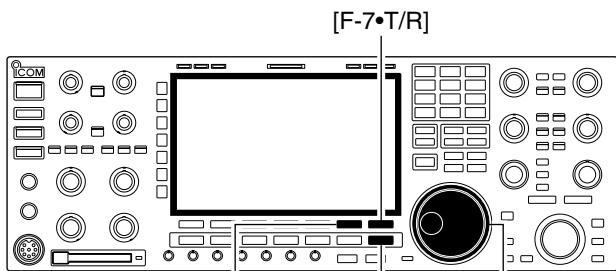
[F-6•TX LEV.] [EXIT/SET] Main dial

① Call up the voice recorder screen as described as above.
② Push [F-6•TX LEV.] to select the voice memory transmit level set condition.
③ Push the desired memory channel switch, [F-1•T1] to [F-4•T4], momentarily to transmit the contents.
  • The transceiver transmits automatically.
  • " SEND " indicator appears and the memory timer counts down.
④ Rotate the main dial to adjust the transmit voice level.
  • Push [F-7•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default condition.
⑤ Push [EXIT/SET] to return to the voice recorder screen.

■ Voice set mode
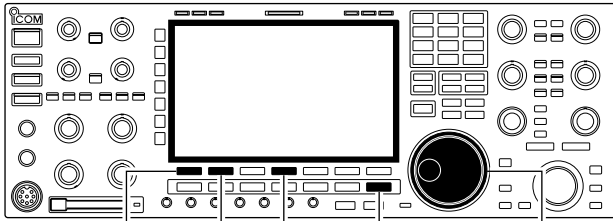
[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼] [F-4•DEF] [EXIT/SET] Main dial

Sets the automatic monitor function, short play and normal recording times for voice recorder.

①Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
②Push [F-2•VOICE] to call up the voice recorder screen.
③Push [EXIT/SET] to select voice recorder menu.
④Push [F-7•SET] to select voice set mode screen.
⑤Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired item.
⑥Rotate main dial to set the desired condition or value.
  • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default condition or value.
⑦Push [EXIT/SET] to exit the voice set mode screen.

Auto Monitor	ON
Turn the automatic monitor function for recorded audio contents transmission.	• ON : Monitors transmitting audio automatically when sending a recorded audio. • OFF : Monitors transmitting audio only when the monitor function is in use.

Short Play Time	5s
Set the desired time period for the one-touch playing (when [PLAY] is pushed momentarily).	• 3 to 10 sec. in 1 sec. steps can be set. (default: 5 sec.)

Normal Rec Time	15s
Set the desired time period for the for one-touch recording (when [REC] is pushed momentarily).	• 5 to 15 sec. in 1 sec. steps can be set. (default: 15 sec.)

■ Saving a voice memory into the CF memory card

◇ Saving the received audio memory

[F-6•SAVE] [F-7•WIDE]

[F-1•DIR/FILE] [F-4•EDIT] [EXIT/SET] Main dial
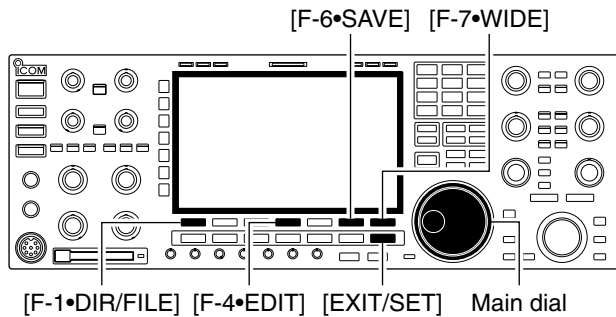
• Voice recorder RX memory screen

• Voice file save screen— file name edit

• While saving
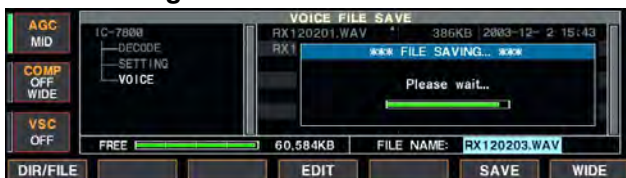
The recorded RX memory contents can be saved into the CF (Compact Flash) memory card.

① During voice recorder RX memory screen indication, push [F-6•SAVE] to select voice file save screen.
  • Previously selected screen, TX or RX memory, is displayed. If the TX memory channel (T1–T4) appears, push [F-7•T/R] to select RX memory channel.
② Change the following conditions if desired.
  • **File name:**
    ⑴ Push [F-4•EDIT] to select file name edit condition.
      • Push [F-1• DIR/FILE] several times to select the file name, if necessary.
    ⑵ Push [ABC], [123] or [Symbol] to select the character group, then rotate the main dial to select the character.
      • [ABC] : A to Z (capital letters); [123]: 0 to 9 (numerals); [Symbol]: ! # $ % & ' ` ^ + − = ( ) [ ] { } _ ˜ @ can be selected.
      • Push [F-1•◄] to move the cursor left, push [F-2•►] to move the cursor right, push [F-3•DEL] to delete a character and push [F-4•SPACE] to insert a space.
    ⑶ Push [EXIT/SET] to set the file name.
  • **Saving location**
    ⑴ Push [F-1•DIR/FILE] to select tree view screen.
    ⑵ Select the desired directory or folder in the CF memory card.
      • Push [F-4•◄ ►] to select the upper directory.
      • Push [F-2•▲] or [F-3•▼] to select folder in the same directory.
      • Push [F-4•◄ ►] for 1 sec. to select a folder in the directory.
      • Push [F-5•REN/DEL] to rename the folder.
      • Push [F-5•REN/DEL] for 1 sec. to delete the folder.
      • Push [F-6•MAKE] for 1 sec. to making a new folder. (Edit the name with the same manner as the "• File name" above.)
    ⑶ Push [F-1•DIR/FILE] twice to select the file name.
③ Push [F-6•SAVE].
  • After the saving is completed, return to PSK decode menu 2 automatically.

◇ Saving the TX memory

The TX memory contents can also be saved into the CF (Compact Flash) memory card. However, the contents are saved with the memory channel list, set mode conditions, etc. at the same time.
See page 12-23 for details.

MEMORY OPERATION   Section   8

■ Memory channels

The transceiver has 101 memory channels. The memory mode is very useful for quickly changing to often-used frequencies.

All 101 memory channels are tuneable which means the programmed frequency can be tuned temporarily with the main dial, etc. in memory mode.

MEMORY CHANNEL	MEMORY CHANNEL NUMBER	CAPABILITY	TRANSFER TO VFO	OVER-WRITING	CLEAR
Regular memory channels	1–99	One frequency and one mode in each memory channel.	Yes	Yes	Yes
Scan edge memory channels	P1, P2	One frequency and one mode in each memory channel as scan edges for programmed scan.	Yes	Yes	No

■ Memory channel selection

◇ Using the [▲]/[▼] keys

[▲] [▼] [V/M]
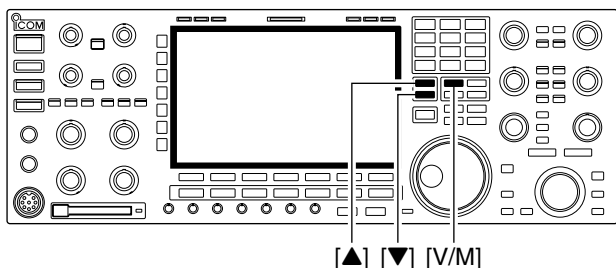
① Push [V/M] to select memory mode.
② Push [▲]/[▼] several times to select the desired memory channel.
  • Push and hold [▲]/[▼] for continuous selection.
  • [UP] and [DN] on the microphone can also be used.
③ To return to VFO mode, push [V/M] again.

◇ Using the keypad
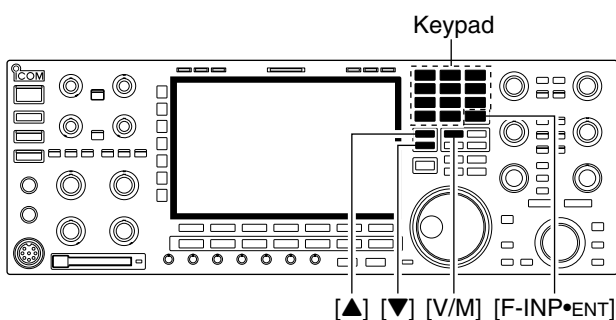
Keypad

[▲] [▼] [V/M] [F-INP•ENT]

① Push [V/M] to select memory mode.
② Push [F-INP•ENT].
③ Push the desired memory channel number using the keypad.
  • Enter 100 or 101 to select scan edge channel P1 or P2, respectively.
④ Push [▲] or [▼] to select the desired memory channel.

[EXAMPLE]
To select the memory channel 3;
- Push [F-INP•ENT], [7•3], then push [▲] or [▼].

To select the memory channel 12;
- Push [F-INP•ENT], [1.8•1], [3.5•2], then push [▲] or [▼].

To select the scan edge channel P1;
- Push [F-INP•ENT], [1.8•1], [50•0], [50•0], then push [▲] or [▼].

To select the scan edge channel P2;
- Push [F-INP•ENT], [1.8•1], [50•0], [1.8•1], then push [▲] or [▼].

■ Memory list screen

The memory list screen simultaneously shows 9 memory channels and their programmed contents. 15 memory channels can be displayed in the wide memory list screen.

You can select a desired memory channel from memory list screen.

◇ Selecting a memory channel using the memory list screen
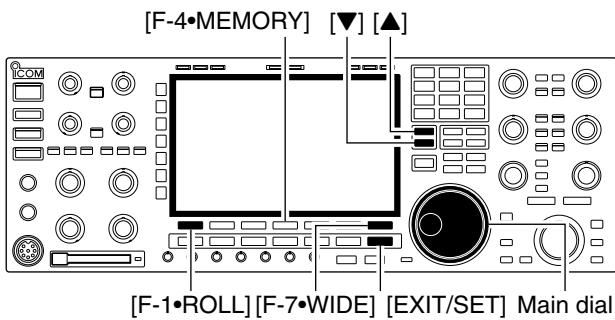
[F-4•MEMORY] [▼] [▲]

[F-1•ROLL] [F-7•WIDE] [EXIT/SET] Main dial

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Push [F-4•MEMORY] to select memory list screen.
   • [F-7•WIDE] switches the standard and wide screens.
③ While pushing [F-1•ROLL], rotate the main dial to select the desired memory channel.
   • [▲] and [▼] can also be used.
④ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit memory list screen.

• Memory list screen

◇ Confirming programmed memory channels

[F-1•ROLL] [F-2•SET]   [EXIT/SET]   Main dial
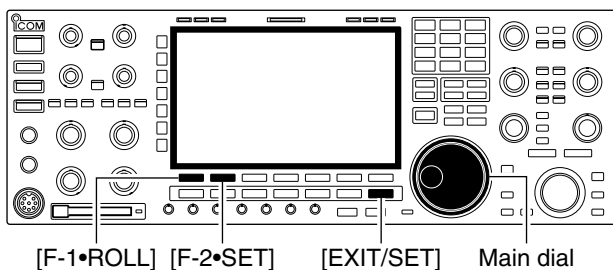
① Select memory list screen as described above.
② While pushing [F-1•ROLL], rotate the main dial to scroll the screen.
③ Push [F-2•SET] to select the highlighted memory channel, if desired.
   • "▶" appears beside the selected memory channel number in the memory list screen and the selected memory channel contents are displayed below the frequency readout.
④ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit memory list screen.

■ Memory channel programming

◇ Programming in VFO mode

[▲] [▼]   [MW]
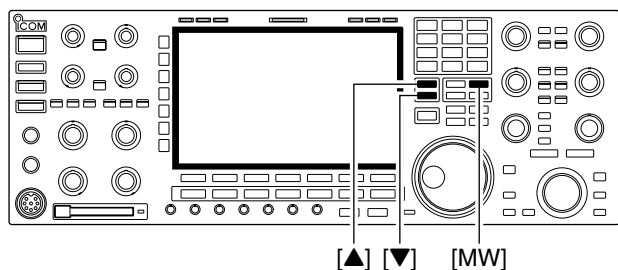
[EXAMPLE]: Programming 7.088 MHz/LSB into memory channel 12.

Memory channel programming can be preformed either in VFO mode or in memory mode.

①Set the desired frequency, operating mode and filter width in VFO mode.
②Push [▲]/[▼] several times to select the desired memory channel.
  • Memory list screen is convenient for selecting the desired channel.
  • Memory channel contents appear in the memory channel readout (below the frequency readout).
  • "--.---.--" appears if the selected memory channel is a blank channel (and does not have contents).
③Push [MW] for 1 sec. to program the displayed frequency and operating mode into the memory channel.

◇ Programming in memory mode

[EXAMPLE]: Programming 21.280 MHz/USB into memory channel 18.

①Select the desired memory channel with [▲]/[▼] in memory mode.
  • Memory channel contents appear in the memory channel readout (below the frequency readout).
  • "--.---.--" appears if the selected memory channel is a blank channel (and does not have contents).
②Set the desired frequency and operating mode in memory mode.
  • To program a blank channel, use direct frequency entry with the keypad or memo pads, etc.
③Push [MW] for 1 sec. to program the displayed frequency and operating mode into the memory channel.

■ Frequency transferring

The frequency and operating mode in a memory channel can be transferred to the VFO.
Frequency transferring can be performed in either VFO mode or memory mode.

◇ Transferring in VFO mode

TRANSFERRING EXAMPLE IN VFO MODE
Operating frequency : 21.320 MHz/USB (VFO)
Contents of M-ch 16 : 14.018 MHz/CW

This is useful for transferring programmed contents to VFO.

①Select VFO mode with [V/M].
②Select the memory channel to be transferred with [▲]/[▼].
   • Memory list screen is convenient for selecting the desired channel.
   • Memory channel contents appear in the memory channel readout (below the frequency readout).
   • "--.---.--" appears if the selected memory channel is a blank channel. In this case transferring is impossible.
③Push [V/M] for 1 sec. to transfer the frequency and operating mode.
   • Transferred frequency and operating mode appear on the frequency readout.

◇ Transferring in memory mode

This is useful for transferring frequency and operating mode while operating in memory mode.

When you have changed the frequency or operating mode in the selected memory channel:
• **Displayed** frequency, mode and filter setting are transferred.
• **Programmed** frequency and mode in the memory channel are not transferred, and they remain in the memory channel.

①Select the memory channel to be transferred with [▲]/[▼] in memory mode.
   • And, set the frequency or operating mode if required.
②Push [V/M] for 1 sec. to transfer the frequency and operating mode.
   • Displayed frequency and operating mode are transferred to the VFO.
③To return to VFO mode, push [V/M] momentarily.

TRANSFERRING EXAMPLE IN MEMORY MODE
Operating frequency : 21.320 MHz/USB (M-ch 16)
Contents of M-ch 16 : 14.018 MHz/CW

Programmed contents appear.

■ Memory names

All memory channels (including scan edges) can be tagged with alphanumeric names of up to 10 characters each.

Capital letters, small letters, numerals, some symbols (! # $ % & ¥ ? " ' ` ^ + − ＊ / . , : ; = < > ( ) [ ] { } | _ ~ @) and spaces can be used.

◇ Editing (programming) memory names

[ABC]/[abc] [123]/[Symbol] [F-3•DEL] Keypad
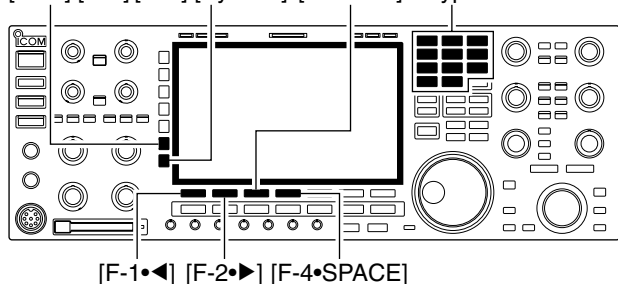
[F-1•◄] [F-2•►] [F-4•SPACE]

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Push [F-4•MEMORY] to select memory list screen.
③ Select the desired memory channel.
④ Push [F-4•NAME] to edit memory channel name.
   • A cursor appears and blinks.
   • Memory channel names of blank channels cannot be edited.
⑤ Input the desired character by rotating the main dial or by pushing the band key for number input.
   • Push [ABC] or [abc] to toggle capital and small letters.
   • Push [123] or [Symbol] to toggle numerals and symbols.
   • Push [F-1•◄] or [F-2•►] for cursor movement.
   • Push [F-3•DEL] to delete the selected character.
   • Push [F-4•SPACE] to input a space.
   • Pushing the transceiver's keypad, [0]–[9], can also enter numerals.
⑥ Push [EXIT/SET] to input and set the name.
   • The cursor disappears.
⑦ Repeat steps ③ to ⑥ to program another memory channel's name, if desired.
⑧ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit memory list screen.

■ Memory clearing

Any unnecessary memory channels can be cleared. The cleared memory channels become blank channels.
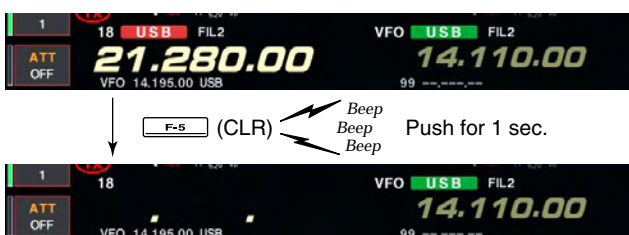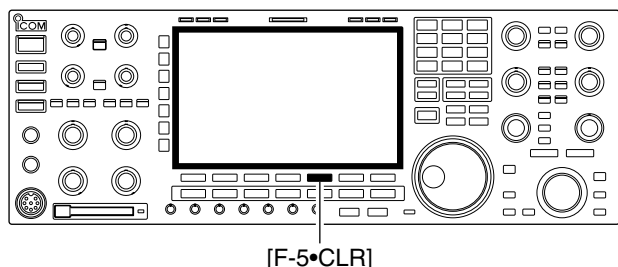
① Select memory mode with [V/M].
② Push [F-4•MEMORY] to select memory list screen.
③ Select the desired memory channel with [▲]/[▼].
④ Push [F-5•CLR] for 1 sec. to clear the contents.
   • The programmed frequency and operating mode disappear.
⑤ To clear other memory channels, repeat steps ③ and ④.

[F-5•CLR]

[F-5] (CLR) Beep Beep Beep Push for 1 sec.

■ Memo pads

[MP-W] [MP-R]
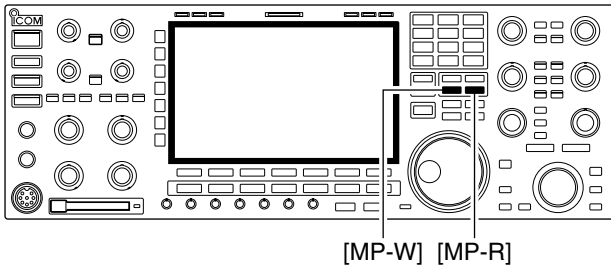
The transceiver has a memo pad function to store frequency and operating mode for easy write and recall. The memo pads are separate from memory channels.

The default number of memo pads is 5, however, this can be increased to 10 in set mode if desired. (p. 12-16)
Memo pads are convenient when you want to memorize a frequency and operating mode temporarily, such as when you find a DX station in a pile-up, or when a desired station is busy for a long time and you want to temporarily search for other stations.

Use the transceiver's memo pads instead of relying on hastily scribbled notes that are easily misplaced.

◇ Writing frequencies and operating modes into memo pads

Newest
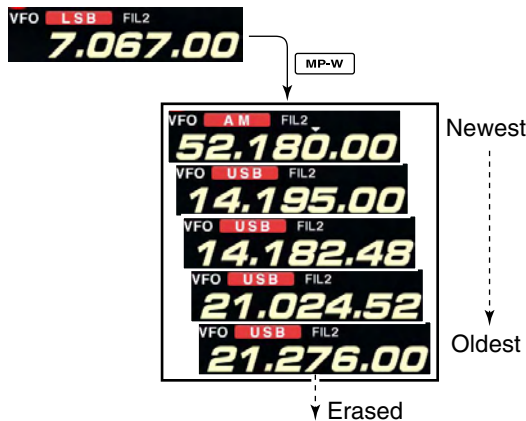
Oldest

Erased

In this example, 21.276 MHz (LSB) will be erased when 7.067 MHz (LSB) is written.

You can simply write the accessed readout frequency and operating mode by pushing [MP-W].

When you write a 6th frequency and operating mode, the oldest written frequency and operating mode are automatically erased to make room for the new settings.

▨ Each memo pad must have its own unique combination of frequency and operating mode; memo pads having identical settings cannot be written.

◇ Calling up a frequency from a memo pad

MEMO PADS

Newest

Oldest
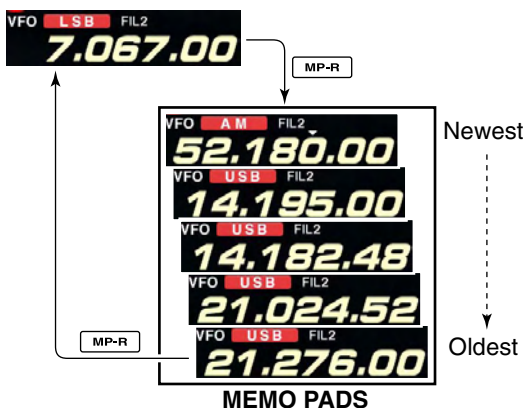
You can simply call up the desired frequency and operating mode of a memo pad by pushing [MP-R] several times.
• Both VFO and memory modes can be used.
• The frequency and operating mode are called up, starting from the most recently written.

When you call up a frequency and an operating mode from memo pads with [MP-R], the previously displayed frequency and operating mode are automatically stored in a temporary pad. The frequency and operating mode in the temporary pad can be recalled by pushing [MP-R] several times.
• You may think there are 6 memo pads because 6 different frequencies (5 are in memo pads and 1 is in the temporary pad) are called up by [MP-R].

▨ If you change the frequency or operating mode called up from a memo pad with the main dial, etc., the frequency and operating mode in the temporary pad are erased.

SCANS   Section 9

■ Scan types

PROGRAMMED SCAN

Repeatedly scans between two scan edge frequencies (scan edge memory channels P1 and P2).

Scan edge
P1 or P2

Scan edge
P2 or P1

Scan

Jump

This scan operates in VFO mode.

⊿F SCAN

Repeatedly scans within ⊿F span area.

Start frequency

−⊿F frequency

+⊿F frequency

Scan   Scan

Jump

This scan operates in both VFO and memory modes.

MEMORY SCAN

Repeatedly scans all programmed memory channels.

Blank channel

Mch 2 ★2   Mch 3 ★1   Mch 4

Mch 1 ★1

Mch 5 ★1

*"★1," "★2" and "★3" show that the channel is specified as the select memory.

Mch 99 ★1   Mch 7 ★1   Mch 6 ★3

This scan operates in memory mode.

SELECT MEMORY SCAN

Repeatedly scans all or one of 3 select memory channels.

Blank channel

Mch 2 ★2   Mch 3 ★1   Mch 4

Mch 1 ★1

Mch 5 ★1

*"★1," "★2" and "★3" show that the channel is specified as the select memory.

Mch 99 ★1   Mch 7 ★1   Mch 6 ★3

This scan operates in memory mode.

■ Preparation

• Channels

For programmed scan:
Program scan edge frequencies into scan edge memory channels P1 and P2.

For ⊿F scan:
Set the ⊿F span (⊿F scan range) in the scan screen.

For memory scan:
Program 2 or more memory channels except scan edge memory channels.

For select memory scan:
Designate 2 or more memory channels as select memory channels. To designate the channel as a select memory channel, choose a memory channel, then push [F-3•SELECT] in the scan screen (memory mode) or in the memory list screen.

• Scan resume ON/OFF

You can select the scan to resume or cancel when detecting a signal, in set mode. Scan resume ON/OFF must be set before operating a scan. See p. 9-3 for ON/OFF setting and scan resume condition details.

• Scan speed

Scan speed can be selected from 2 levels, high or low, in scan set mode. See p. 9-3 for details.

• Squelch condition

SCAN STARTS WITH	PROGRAMMED SCAN	MEMORY SCAN
SQUELCH OPEN	The scan continues until it is stopped manually, and does not pause even if it detects signals.	Scan pauses on each channel when the scan resume is ON; not applicable when OFF.
SQUELCH CLOSED	Scan stops when detecting a signal. If you set scan resume ON in set mode, the scan pauses for 10 sec. when detecting a signal, then resumes. When a signal disappears while scan is paused, scan resumes 2 sec. later.	

■ Voice squelch control function

This function is useful when you don't want unmodulated signals pausing or cancelling a scan. When the voice squelch control function is activated, the receiver checks received signals for voice components.

If a receiver signal includes voice components, and the tone of the voice components changes within 1 sec., scan pauses (or stops). If the received signal includes no voice components or the tone of the voice components does not change within 1 sec., scan resumes.
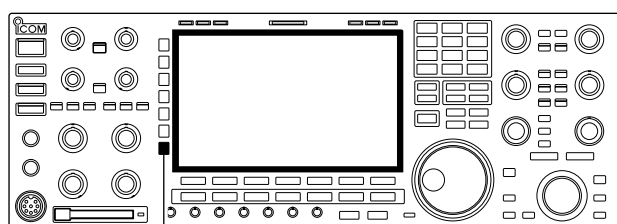
➡ While a phone mode (SSB, AM or FM) is selected, push [VSC] to switch the VSC (Voice Squelch Control) function ON and OFF.
  • "VSC" appears when the function is activated.

[VSC]

• The VSC function activates for any scan.
• The VSC function resumes the scan on unmodulated signals, regardless of whether the scan resume condition is set to ON or OFF.

■ Scan set mode
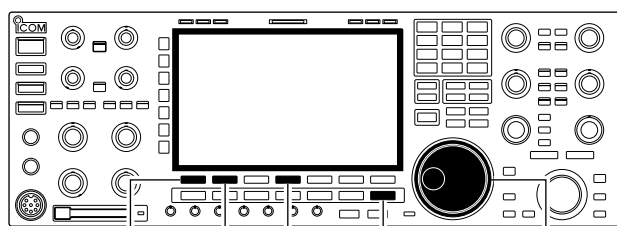
[F-1•▲] [F-2•▼] [F-4•DEF] [EXIT/SET] Main dial

When the squelch is open, scan continues until it is stopped manually— it does not pause on detected signals. When squelch is closed, scan stops when detecting a signal, then resumes according to the scan resume condition. Scan speed and the scan resume condition can be set using the scan set mode.

① Push [F-5•SCAN] to select scan screen.
② Push [F-7•SET] to select scan set mode.
③ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired item.
④ Rotate the main dial to select the desired condition.
  • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default setting.
⑤ Push [EXIT/SET] to return to scan menu.

SCAN Speed	HIGH
Select the desired scan speed from high and low.	• HIGH : scan is faster • LOW : scan is slower

SCAN Resume	ON
Set the scan resume function ON and OFF.	• ON : When detecting a signal, scan pauses for 10 sec., then resumes. When a signal disappears, scan resumes 2 sec. later. • OFF : When detecting a signal, cancels scanning.

■ Programmed scan operation
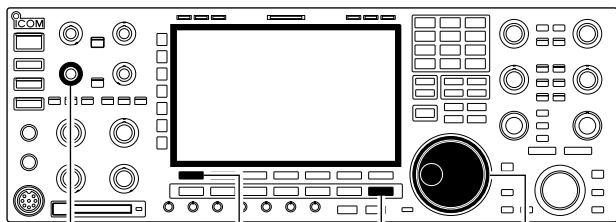
[SQL] for main   [F-1•PROG]   [EXIT/SET]   Main dial
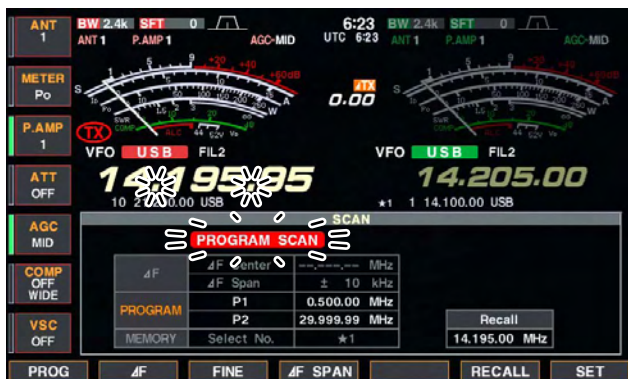
① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Select VFO mode.
③ Select the desired operating mode.
   • The operating mode can also be changed while scanning.
④ Push [F-5•SCAN] to select the scan screen.
⑤ Set the main band's [SQL] open or closed.
   • See page 9-2 for squelch condition.
⑥ Push [F-1•PROG] to start the programmed scan.
   • " PROGRAM SCAN " and decimal points blink while scanning.
⑦ When the scan detects a signal, the scan stops, pauses or ignores it depending on the resume setting and the squelch condition.
⑧ To cancel the scan, push [F-1•PROG].
   • Rotating the main dial also cancels the scan.
⑨ Push [F-6•RECALL] for 1 sec. to recall the frequency that is set before starting the scan, if desired.

If the same frequencies are programmed into the scan edge memory channel P1 and P2, programmed scan does not start.

■ ⊿F scan operation

[F-4•⊿F SPAN]
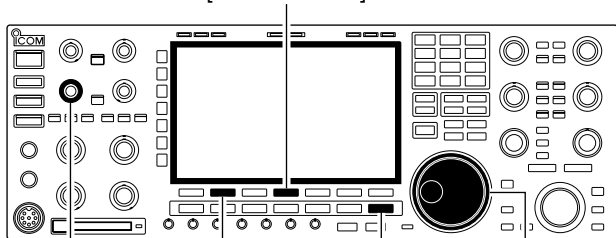
[SQL] for main   [F-2•⊿F]   [EXIT/SET]   Main dial
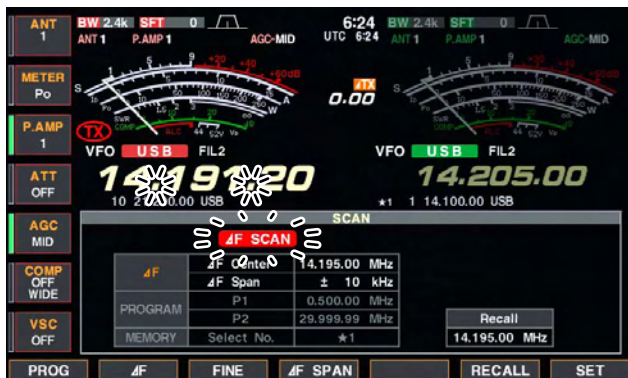
① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Select VFO mode or a memory channel.
③ Select the desired operating mode.
   • The operating mode can also be changed while scanning.
④ Push [F-5•SCAN] to select the scan screen.
⑤ Set the main band's [SQL] open or closed.
   • See page 9-2 for squelch condition.
⑥ Set the ⊿F span by pushing [F-4•⊿F SPAN].
   • ±5 kHz, ±10 kHz, ±20 kHz, ±50 kHz, ±100 kHz, ±500 kHz and ±1000 kHz are selectable.
⑦ Set center frequency of the ⊿F span.
⑧ Push [F-2•⊿F] to start the ⊿F scan.
   • " ⊿F SCAN " and decimal points blink while scanning.
⑨ When the scan detects a signal, the scan stops, pauses or ignores it depending on the resume setting and the squelch condition.
⑩ To cancel the scan, push [F-2•⊿F].
   • Rotating the main dial also cancels the scan.
⑪ Push [F-6•RECALL] for 1 sec. to recall the frequency that is set before starting the scan, if desired.

■ Fine programmed scan/fine ⊿F scan

Fine scan functions as programmed or ⊿F scan, but scan speed decreases when the squelch opens but does not stop. The scanning tuning step shifts from 50 Hz to 10 Hz while the squelch opens.

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Push [F-5•SCAN] to select the scan screen.
③ Set for programmed scan or ⊿F scan as described on previous page.
④ Push [F-1•PROG] or [F-2•⊿F] to start a scan.
  • " PROGRAM SCAN " or " ⊿F SCAN " and decimal points blink while scanning.
⑤ Push [F-3•FINE] to start a fine scan.
  • " FINE PROGRAM SCAN " or " FINE ⊿F SCAN " blinks instead of " PROGRAM SCAN " or " ⊿F SCAN ," respectively.
⑥ When the scan detects a signal, the scan speed decreases but does not stop.
⑦ Push [F-1•PROG] or [F-2•⊿F] to stop the scan; push [F-3•FINE] to cancel the fine scan.
  • Rotating the main dial also cancels the scan.
⑧ Push [F-6•RECALL] for 1 sec. to recall the frequency that is set before starting the scan, if desired.

[F-1•PROG] [F-2•⊿F] [F-3•FINE] [EXIT/SET]
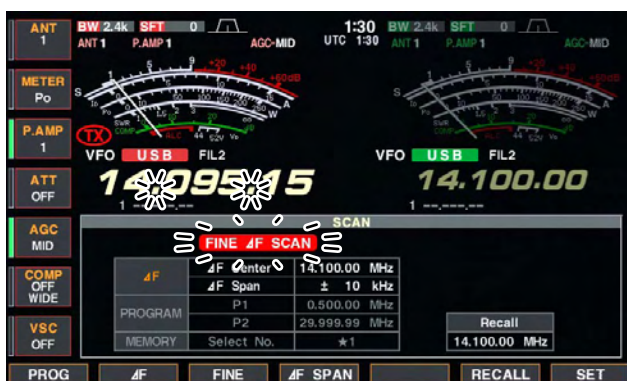
■ Memory scan operation
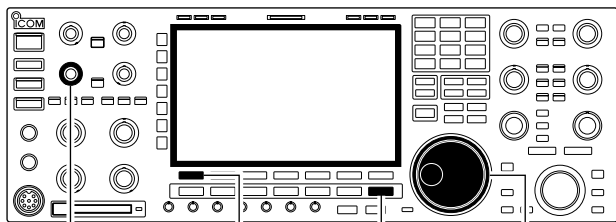
[SQL] for main   [F-1•MEMO]   [EXIT/SET]   Main dial
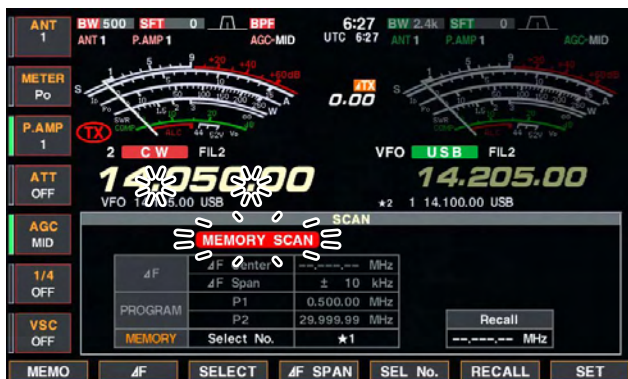
① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Select memory mode.
③ Push [F-5•SCAN] to select the scan screen.
④ Set the main band's [SQL] open or closed.
   • See page 9-2 for squelch condition.
⑤ Push [F-1•MEMO] to start the memory scan.
   • " MEMORY SCAN " and decimal points blink while scanning.
⑥ When the scan detects a signal, the scan stops, pauses or ignores it depending on the resume setting and the squelch condition.
⑦ To cancel the scan, push [F-1•MEMO].
   • Rotating the main dial also cancels the scan.

〲 2 or more memory channels must be programmed for memory scan to start.

■ Select memory scan operation

[F-3•SELECT]   [F-5•SEL No.]
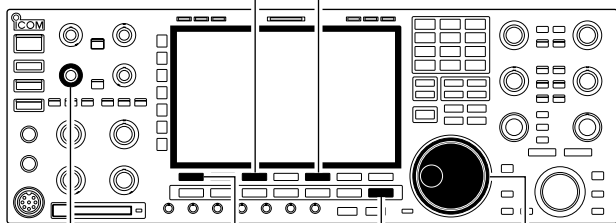
[SQL] for main   [F-1•MEMO]   [EXIT/SET]   Main dial

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Select memory mode.
③ Push [F-5•SCAN] to select the scan screen.
④ Set the main band's [SQL] open or closed.
   • See page 9-2 for squelch condition.
⑤ Push [F-5•SEL No.] several times to select the select scan number from ★1, ★2, ★3 and ★1/★2/★3.
⑥ Push [F-1•MEMO] to start the memory scan.
   • " MEMORY SCAN " and decimal points blink while scanning.
⑦ Push [F-3•SELECT] to start select memory scan; push [F-3•SELECT] again to return to memory scan, if desired.
   • " SELECT MEMORY SCAN "   blinks   instead   of   " MEMORY SCAN " during select memory scan.
⑧ When the scan detects a signal, the scan stops, pauses or ignores it depending on the resume setting and the squelch condition.
⑨ To cancel the scan, push [F-1•MEMO].
   • Rotating the main dial also cancels the scan.

〲 2 or more memory channels must be designated as select memory channels, as well as the same select scan number, for select memory scan to start.

■ Setting select memory channels

◇ Setting in scan screen

①Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
②Select memory mode.
③Push [F-5•SCAN] to select the scan screen.
④Select the desired memory channel to set as a select memory channel.
   • [▲]/[▼] keys and direct keypad selections can be used.
⑤Push [F-3•SELECT] several times to set the memory channel as a select memory ★1, ★2, ★3 or not.
⑥Repeat steps ④ to ⑤ to program another memory channel as a select memory channel, if desired.
⑦Push [EXIT/SET] to exit the scan screen.

◇ Setting in memory list screen

①Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
②Push [F-4•MEMORY] to select memory list screen.
③Rotate the main dial while pushing [F-1•ROLL] or [F-2•SET] to select the desired memory channel.
   • [▲]/[▼] keys and direct keypad selections can be used.
④Push [F-3•SELECT] several times to set the memory channel as a select memory ★1, ★2, ★3 or not.
⑤Repeat steps ③ to ④ to program another memory channel as a select memory channel, if desired.
⑥Push [EXIT/SET] to exit the memory list screen.

◇ Erasing the select scan setting

①Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
②Push [F-4•MEMORY] to select memory list screen, or push [F-5•SCAN] to select scan screen.
③Push [F-3•SELECT] for 1 sec. to display memory select all clear window.
④Push one of the following keys to clear all select scan setting.
   [F-1•★1]   : Clears all ★1 setting.
   [F-2•★2]   : Clears all ★2 setting.
   [F-3•★3]   : Clears all ★3 setting.
   [F-4•★1,2,3] : Clears all select setting.
⑤Push [EXIT/SET] to exit the memory list screen.

■ Tone scan

[TONE] [F-4•DEF] [F-6•T-SCAN]

[F-1•▲][F-2•▼]   [EXIT/SET]
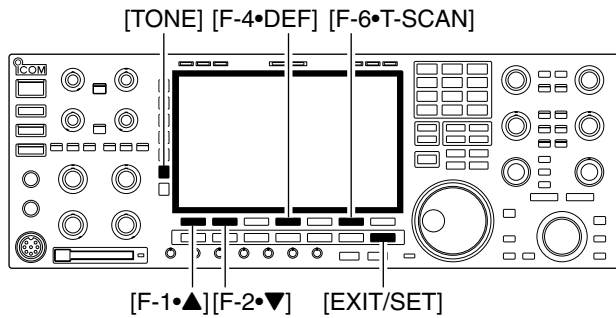
The transceiver can detect the subaudible tone frequency in a received signal. By monitoring a signal that is being transmitted on a repeater input frequency, you can determine the tone frequency required to access the repeater.

①Set the desired frequency or memory channel to be checked for a tone frequency.
②Push [AM/FM] several times to select FM mode.
③Push [TONE] for 1 sec. to enter tone frequency screen.
④Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to check the repeater tone frequency or tone squelch frequency, respectively.
⑤Push [F-6•T-SCAN] to start the tone scan.
  • "SCAN" blinks while scanning.
⑥When the tone frequency is detected, the tone scan pauses.
  • The tone frequency is set temporarily on a memory channel. Program into the memory channel to store the tone frequency permanently.
  • The decoded tone frequency is used for the repeater tone frequency or tone squelch frequency.
⑦To stop the scan, push [F-6•T-SCAN].
  • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default frequency.
⑧Push [EXIT/SET] to exit tone frequency screen.

ANTENNA TUNER OPERATION   Section **10**

■ Antenna connection and selection

[ANT]
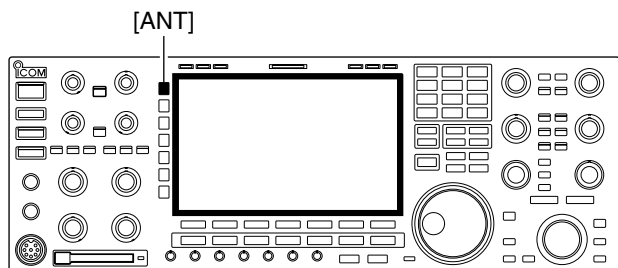
The IC-7800 has 4 antenna connectors for the HF/50 MHz bands, [ANT1], [ANT2], [ANT3], and [ANT4].

For each operating band the IC-7800 covers, there is a band memory which can memorize a selected antenna. When you change the operating frequency beyond a band, the previously used antenna is automatically selected (see below) for the new band. This function is convenient when you use 4 antennas for HF and 50 MHz bands operation.

• Antenna selection mode: "Auto"

3.5/7 MHz bands 21/28 MHz bands 50 MHz bands RX only

ANT 1 ANT 2 ANT 3 ANT 4
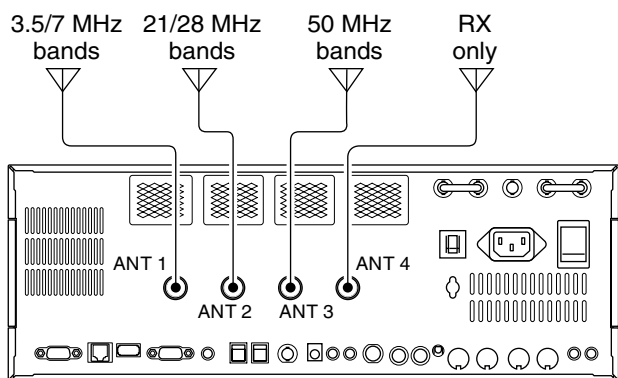
Once an antenna has been selected for use with a band by pushing [ANT], the antenna is automatically selected whenever that band is accessed.

[EXAMPLE]: a 3.5/7 MHz antenna is connected to [ANT1], a 21/28 MHz antenna is connected to [ANT2], a 50 MHz antenna is connected to [ANT3]. When the antenna selector function is set to "Auto," an antenna is automatically selected when changing bands. [ANT4] can be used for receive only.

• Antenna selection mode: "Manual"

[ANT]
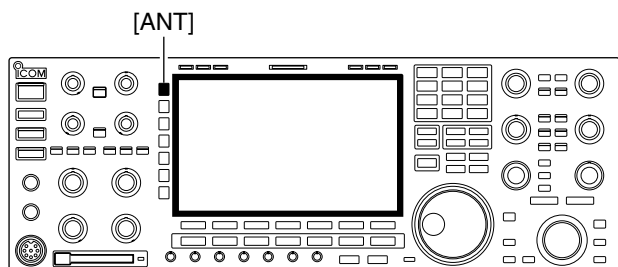
When "Manual" is selected, you can use the all antenna connectors, [ANT1] [ANT2], [ANT3] and [ANT4], however, band memory does not function. In this case you must select an antenna manually.

• Antenna selection mode: "OFF"

In this case, only [ANT1] antenna connector can be used. [ANT] switch does not function.

■ Antenna memory settings

[ANT]   Band keys

[F-2•ANT MW]
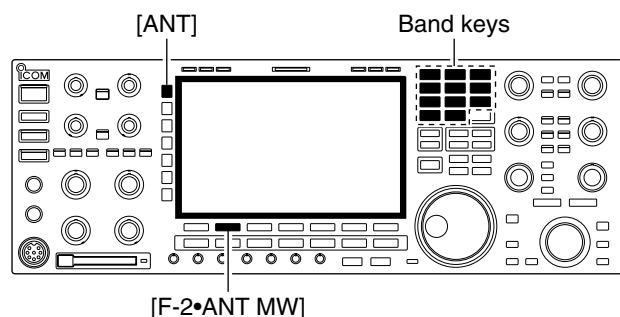
Storing the antenna connector number for each frequency band to suit your antenna system.

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Push [ANT] for 1 sec. to select antenna set screen.
③ Select the desired frequency band with a band key.
④ Push [ANT] several times to select the desired antenna number that you want to set for the selected frequency band.
  • "★" appears.
⑤ Push [F-2•ANT MW] for 1 sec. to store the antenna selection into the antenna memory.
  • "★" disappears.
⑥ Repeat the steps ③ to ⑤ to store the antenna selection for another frequency bands, if desired.
⑦ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit antenna set screen.

◇ Antenna type selection
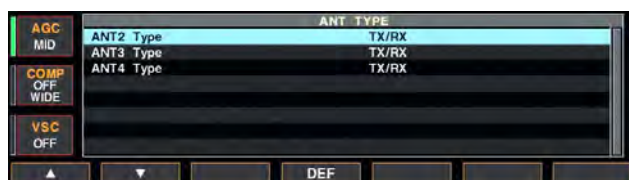
When no antenna is connected to [ANT2], [ANT3], and/or [ANT4], these antenna connector can be deactivated— deleting the antenna number from selection. This prevent the transceiver from accidental transmission with unmatched antenna selection.
In addition, receive only antenna can be specified to [ANT4].

① Select the antenna set screen as described above.
② Push [F-7•ANT TYPE] to select antenna type set screen.
③ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired antenna.
④ Rotate the main dial to select the desired antenna condition from TX/RX, RX (ANT4 only) and OFF.
  • TX/RX : Select when an antenna is connected.
  • OFF   : Select when no antenna is connected.
  • RX   : Select when a receive only antenna is connected. (available for the [ANT4] only)
⑤ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit antenna type set screen.

✔ For your information
The antenna(s) that "OFF" is selected cannot be selected with [ANT] switch operation, as well as the antenna memory setting.
When "RX" is selected for [ANT4], "1/R," "2/R" and "3/R" selections will be added for the selection for both [ANT] switch operation and the antenna memory setting. In these selection, using the antenna connected to [ANT1], [ANT2] and/or [ANT3] for transmission and using the antenna connected to [ANT4] for reception.

■ Antenna memory settings (continued)

◇ Temporary memory
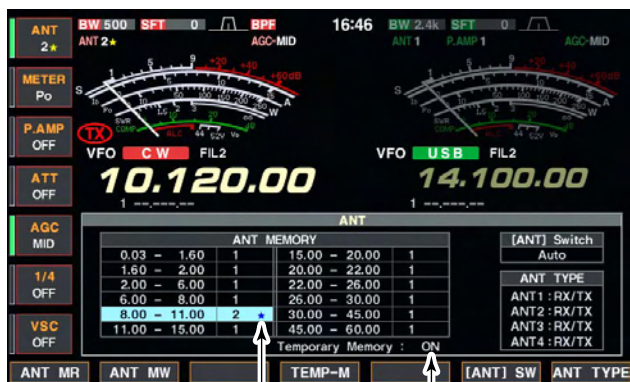
"★" appears when a different antenna from the original is selected.

Push [F-4•TEMP-M] to turn the temporary memory ON and OFF.

The antenna temporary memory memorize the manually selected antenna. The selected antenna will be re-called even the frequency band has been changed.

① Select the antenna set screen.
② Push [F-4•TEMP-M] to turn the temporary memory ON and OFF.
③ Select the desired frequency band with a band key.
④ Push [ANT] to select the desired antenna.
  • "★" appears when a different antenna from the original is selected.
⑤ Push [F-1•ANT MR] to re-call the original antenna.
  • "★" disappears.
⑥ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit antenna set screen.

CAUTION!: Before transmitting with the manually selected antenna, make sure the selected antenna suits to the operating frequency. Otherwise the transceiver may damage.

◇ Antenna selection mode
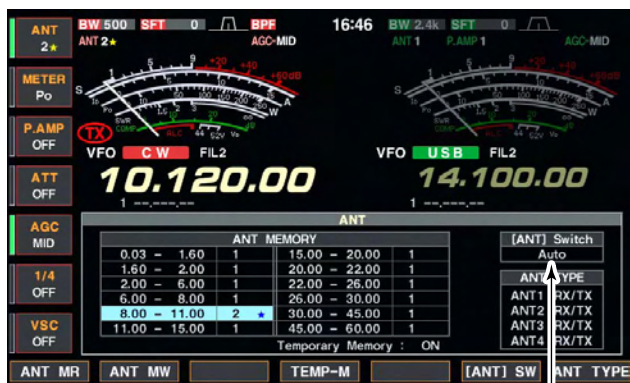
Push [F-6•[ANT] SW] to select the antenna selection mode.

The automatic antenna selection (antenna memory) and the [ANT] switch function can be deactivated if desired.

① Select the antenna set screen.
② Push [F-6•[ANT] SW] to select the antenna selection from Auto, OFF and Manual.
  • Auto : Use the antenna memory. Antenna selection with [ANT] switch is also available.
  • OFF : The antenna connected to [ANT1] can only be used. [ANT] switch is deactivated.
  • Manual : Deactivate the antenna memory function. Antenna can be selected with [ANT] switch operation only.
③ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit antenna set screen.

■ Antenna tuner operation

The internal automatic antenna tuner matches the transceiver to the connected antenna automatically. Once the tuner matches an antenna, the variable capacitor angles are memorized as a preset point for each frequency range (100 kHz steps). Therefore, when you change the frequency range, the variable capacitors are automatically preset to the memorized point.

CAUTION: NEVER transmit with the tuner ON when no antenna is connected. This will damage the transceiver. Be careful of the antenna selection.

◇ Tuner operation
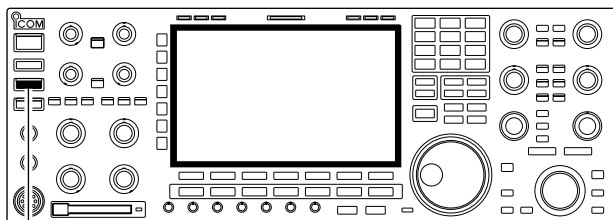
[TUNER]

➥ Push [TUNER] to turn the internal antenna tuner ON. The antenna is tuned automatically when the antenna SWR is higher than 1.5:1.
  • When the tuner is ON, the "TUNE" indicator appears.

NOTES:
• **NEVER** transmit without an antenna properly connected to antenna port in use.
• When 2 or more antennas are connected, select the antenna to be used with [ANT].
• If the SWR is higher than about 1.5:1 when tuning above 100 kHz on an antenna's preset point, push [TUNER] for 1 sec. to start manual tuning.
• The internal tuner may not be able to tune in AM mode. In such cases, push [TUNER] for 1 sec. to manually tune.

• MANUAL TUNING

During SSB operation at low voice levels, the internal tuner may not be tuned correctly. In such cases, manual tuning is helpful.

➥ Push [TUNER] for 1 sec., to start manual tuning.
  • A side tone is emitted and "TUNE" indicator blinks while tuning.
  • If the tuner cannot reduce the SWR to less than 1.5:1 after 20 sec. of tuning, the [TUNER] switch indicator goes out.

• AUTOMATIC TUNER START (HF bands only)

If you want to deactivate the tuner under conditions of VSWR 1.5:1 or less, use the auto tuner start function and turn the tuner OFF. This function activates the tuner automatically when the SWR exceeds 1.5:1.

This function is turned ON in set mode. (p. 12-14).

■ Antenna tuner operation (continued)

• PTT TUNER START

The tuner is always tuned when the PTT is pushed after the frequency is changed (more than 1% from last-tuned frequency). This function removes the "push and hold [TUNER]" operation and activates for the first transmission on a new frequency.

This function is turned ON in set mode. (p. 12-14).

• Antenna tuner of the IC-PW1

When using an external antenna tuner such as the IC-PW1's tuner, tune with the external antenna tuner, while the internal tuner is turned OFF. After tuning is completed, turn the internal tuner ON. Otherwise, both tuners tune simultaneously and correct tuning may not be obtained.

See the instruction manual included with each antenna tuner for their respective operations.

◇ If the tuner cannot tune the antenna

Check the following and try again:
• the [ANT] connector selection.
• the antenna connection and feedline.
• the unaltered antenna SWR. (Less than 3:1 for HF bands; Less than 2.5:1 for 50 MHz band)
• the transmit power. (8 W for HF bands; 15 W for 50 MHz band)
• the power source voltage/capacity.

If the tuner cannot reduce the SWR to less than 1.5:1 after checking the above, perform the following:
• repeat manual tuning several times.
• tune with a 50 Ω dummy load and re-tune the antenna.
• turn power OFF and ON.
• adjust the antenna cable length.
  (This is effective for higher frequencies in some cases.)
• Some antennas, especially for low bands, have a narrow bandwidth. These antennas may not be tuned at the edge of their bandwidth, therefore, tune such an antenna as follows:

[Example]: Suppose you have an antenna which has an SWR of 1.5:1 at 3.55 MHz and an SWR of 3:1 at 3.8 MHz.

① Push [TUNER] to turn the antenna tuner ON.
② Select CW mode.
③ Turn OFF the break-in function. (p. 6-3)
④ Push [TRANSMIT] to set to the transmit condition.
⑤ Set 3.55 MHz and key down.
⑥ Set 3.80 MHz and key down.
⑦ Push [TRANSMIT] to return to the receive condition.

CLOCK AND TIMERS   **Section 11**

■ Time set mode

[ABC]/[abc] [123]/[Symbol] [F-3•◀ ▶][F-5•EDIT]/[F-5•SET]
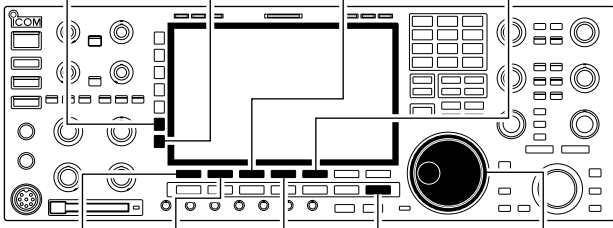
[F-1•▲]   [F-2•▼]   [F-4•DEF]   [EXIT/SET]   Main dial

The IC-7800 has a built-in calender and 24-hour clock with daily power ON/OFF timer functions. Before operating these timer functions, set the current date and time, etc.

① Push [EXIT/SET] to close multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Push [F-7•SET] to select set mode menu screen.
③ Push [F-4•TIME] to select time set mode.
④ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired item.
⑤ Rotate the main dial to set or select the desired value or condition.
⑥ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit time set mode.

Date	2000– 1– 1 (Sat)

Sets the date.

1 Push [F-3•◀ ▶] to select between the year and the month/day, then rotate the main dial to select them.
• The date setting and "DATE-set Push [SET]" indication blink.
2 Push [F-5•SET] to set the date.

Time (Now)	1:23

Sets the local time.

1 Rotate the main dial to set the local time.
• The time setting and "TIME-set Push [SET]" indication blink.
2 Push [F-5•SET] to set the time.

CLOCK2 Function	ON

Turns the clock 2 indication ON and OFF.
The clock 2 is convenient to indicate the UTC or other country's local time, etc.

• ON : The clock 2 is displayed below the local time indication.
• OFF : The clock 2 does not display.

CLOCK2 Offset	± 0:00

Sets the desired off-set time period for the clock 2 indication within –24:00 to +24:00 in 1 min. steps.

• Pushing [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default value.

CLOCK2 Name	UTC

Sets the desired 3-character name for the clock 2.

Capital letters, small letters, numerals, some symbols (! # $ % & ¥ ? " ' ` ^ + – ✱ / . , : ; = < > ( ) [ ] { } | _ ˜ @) and spaces can be used.

1 Push [F-5•EDIT] to select the name edit condition.
• The 1st character and cursor blink.
2 Push [ABC], [abc], [123] or [Symbol] to select the character group, then rotate the main dial to select the character.
• Push [ABC] or [abc] to toggle capital and small letters.
• Push [123] or [Symbol] to toggle numerals and symbols.
• Push [F-1•◀] or [F-2•▶] for cursor movement.
• Push [F-3•DEL] to delete the selected character.
• Push [F-4•SPACE] to input a space.
• Pushing the transceiver's keypad, [0]–[9], can also enter numerals.
3 Push [EXIT/SET] to set the name.

■ Daily timer setting

[F-2•TIMER2]/[F-2•▶] [F-4•TIMER4]/[F-4•CLR] [F-7•SET]

[TIMER]   [F-3•TIMER3] [EXIT/SET] Main dial
[F-1•TIMER1]/[F-1•◀]

The transceiver turns power ON and/or OFF automatically on the specified day of the week and time with the specified frequency settings in each main and sub readout.

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Push [TIMER] for 1 sec. to select timer set screen.
③ Push one of [F-1•TIMER1] to [F-4•TIMER4] to select the desired timer.
④ Rotate the main dial to select the timer action ON and OFF.
⑤ Push [F-2•▶] to select the "DAY" cell, then rotate the main dial to select the desired day of the week.
  • Select "– – –" to not specifying the day of the week. The timer will function every day in this case.
  • Once a day of the week is selected, push [F-4•CLR] for 1 sec. to select "– – –."
⑥ Push [F-2•▶] to select the "REPEAT" cell, then rotate the main dial to select the repeat function ON and OFF.
  • ON : The timer functions every selected day of the week.
  • OFF : The timer functions only coming day of the week.
⑦ Push [F-2•▶] to select the "ON" cell, then rotate the main dial to set the desired transceiver power ON time.
  • When using power OFF timer only, push [F-4•CLR] for 1 sec. to select "– – –."
⑧ Push [F-2•▶] to select the "OFF" cell, then rotate the main dial to set the desired transceiver power OFF time.
  • When using power ON timer only, push [F-4•CLR] for 1 sec. to select "– – –."
⑨ Push [F-2•▶] to select the "MAIN" cell, then rotate the main dial to select the desired memory channel number in the main readout.
  • If using the currently set VFO condition in main readout, push [F-4•CLR] for 1 sec. to select "– – –."
⑩ Push [F-2•▶] to select the "SUB" cell, then rotate the main dial to select the desired memory channel number in the sub readout.
  • If using the currently set VFO condition in sub readout, push [F-4•CLR] for 1 sec. to select "– – –."
⑪ Push [F-7•SET] to set the timer.
  • The timer indicator above [TIMER] switch lights green.
⑫ Repeat the steps ③ to ⑪ to set another timers, if desired.
⑬ Push [EXIT/SET] to exit timer set screen.

■ Setting sleep timer

[F-4•CLR]   [F-7•SLEEP]/[F-7•SET]

[TIMER]   [EXIT/SET]   Main dial

	ACT	DAY	REPEAT	ON	OFF	MAIN	SUB
TIMER1	OFF	---	OFF	0:00	---:---	---	---
TIMER2	OFF	---	OFF	0:00	---:---	---	---
TIMER3	OFF	---	OFF	0:00	---:---	---	---
TIMER4	OFF	---	OFF	0:00	---:---	---	---
TIMER5	OFF	---	OFF	0:00	---:---	---	---

DAILY TIMER
2003-11-20(Thu) 17:47
SLEEP --- min
CLR
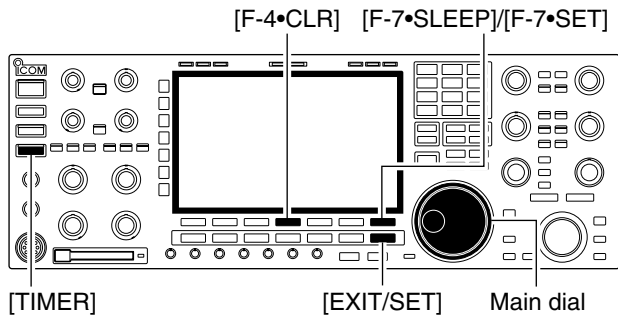
The sleep timer turns the transceiver power OFF automatically after passing the set period. The timer can be set to 5–120 min. in 5 min. steps.

①Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
②Push [TIMER] for 1 sec. to select timer set screen.
③Push [F-7•SLEEP] to select the sleep timer set condition.
  • "– – –" blinks.
④Set the desired time period using the main dial.
  • "TIMER–set Push [SET]" blinks.
  • Push [F-4•CLR] to select "– – –" to cancel the setting.
⑤Push [F-7•SET] to set the time.
  • Push [EXIT/SET] to cancel the setting.
  • The timer indicator above [TIMER] switch lights green.
⑥Push [EXIT/SET] to exit timer set screen.
⑦The transceiver emits 10 beeps and turns OFF after the sleep timer period elapses.
  • The timer indicator blinks while beeping.
  • Push [TIMER] momentarily to cancel the sleep timer, if desired.

■ Timer operation

[TIMER]   [POWER]
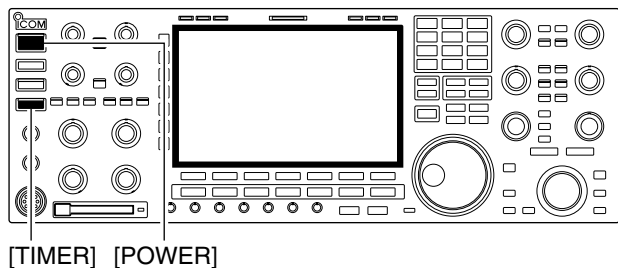
①Preset the daily timer as described previously.
②Push [TIMER] momentarily to turn the timer function ON.
  • The timer indicator above this switch lights green when the timer function is ON.
③Push [POWER] for 1 sec. to turn the power OFF.
  • The timer indicator lights continuously.
④When the set time arrives, the power is automatically turned ON.
⑤The transceiver emits 10 beeps and turns OFF after the power-off period elapses.
  • The timer indicator blinks while beeping.
  • Push [TIMER] momentarily to cancel the sleep timer, if desired.

The timer action in timer set screen must be selected ON to enable the timer operation, described in page 11-3 steps ④.

■ Set mode description

Set mode is used for programming infrequently changed values or conditions of functions. The IC-7800 has a level set mode, display set mode, timer set mode, accessory set mode and miscellaneous (others) set mode.

◇ Set mode operation
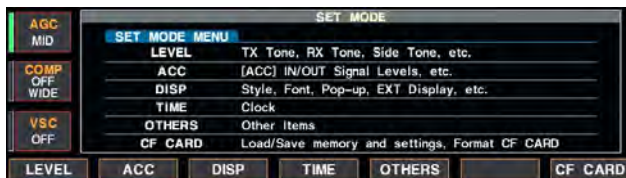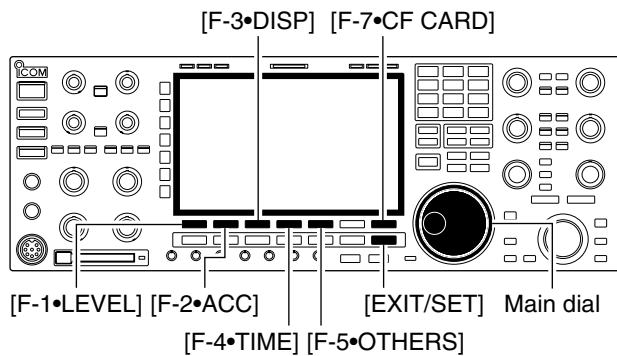
[F-3•DISP] [F-7•CF CARD]

[F-1•LEVEL] [F-2•ACC]   [EXIT/SET]   Main dial

[F-4•TIME] [F-5•OTHERS]

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Push [F-7•SET] to select set mode menu screen.
   • Pushing and holding [EXIT/SET] for 1 sec. also selects set mode menu screen.
③ Push   [F-1•LEVEL],   [F-2•ACC],   [F-3•DISP], [F-4•TIME], [F-5•OTHERS] or [F-7•CF CARD] to enter the desired set mode.
④ For level, accessory, display and miscellaneous (others) set mode, push [F-7•WIDE] to toggle wide and normal screen.
⑤ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the desired item, then rotate main dial to adjust/select the desired value or condition.
   • Pushing [F-3•◄ ►] operation may be necessary for some items.
⑥ Push [EXIT/SET] twice to exit set mode.

◇ Screen arrangement

• **Display set mode** (p. 12-11)

F-3

• **Set mode menu screen** (p. 12-2)

F-1 F-2 F-3 F-4 F-5 F-6 F-7

• **Time set mode** (p. 11-2)

F-4
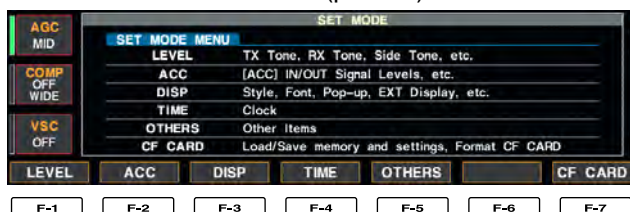
• **Level set mode** (p. 12-4)

• **Miscellaneous (Others) set mode** (p. 12-13)

F-5
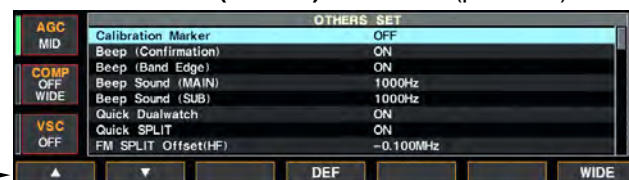
• **ACC set mode** (p. 12-6)

• **CF card set menu** (p. 12-21)

F-2 F-7
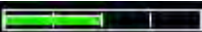
■ Level set mode

SSB TX Tone (Bass)   0

Sets the bass level of the transmit audio tone in SSB
mode from –5 to +5. (default: 0)

SSB TX Tone (Treble)   0

Sets the treble level of the transmit audio tone in SSB
mode from –5 to +5. (default: 0)

AM TX Tone (Bass)   0

Sets the bass level of the transmit audio tone in AM
mode from –5 to +5. (default: 0)

AM TX Tone (Treble)   0

Sets the treble level of the transmit audio tone in AM
mode from –5 to +5. (default: 0)

FM TX Tone (Bass)   0

Sets the bass level of the transmit audio tone in FM
mode from –5 to +5. (default: 0)

FM TX Tone (Treble)   0

Sets the treble level of the transmit audio tone in FM
mode from –5 to +5. (default: 0)

SSB RX Tone (Bass)   0

Sets the bass level of the receive audio tone in SSB
mode from –5 to +5. (default: 0)

SSB RX Tone (Treble)   0

Sets the treble level of the receive audio tone in SSB
mode from –5 to +5. (default: 0)

AM RX Tone (Bass)   0

Sets the bass level of the receive audio tone in AM
mode from –5 to +5. (default: 0)

AM RX Tone (Treble)   0

Sets the treble level of the receive audio tone in AM
mode from –5 to +5. (default: 0)

■ Level set mode (continued)

FM RX Tone (Bass)   0

Sets the bass level of the receive audio tone in FM
mode from –5 to +5. (default: 0)

FM RX Tone (Treble)   0

Sets the treble level of the receive audio tone in FM
mode from –5 to +5. (default: 0)

SSB TBW (WIDE)   100 – 2900

Sets the transmission passband width for wide setting   Lower freq. : 100 (default), 300 and 500 Hz
by selecting the lower and higher frequencies.   Higher freq.: 2500, 2700 and 2900 Hz (default)

SSB TBW (MID)   300 – 2700

Sets the transmission passband width for middle set-   Lower freq. : 100, 300 (default) and 500 Hz
ting by selecting the lower and higher frequencies.   Higher freq.: 2500, 2700 (default) and 2900 Hz

SSB TBW (NAR)   500 – 2500

Sets the transmission passband width for narrow set-   Lower freq. : 100, 300 and 500 Hz (default)
ting by selecting the lower and higher frequencies.   Higher freq.: 2500 (default), 2700 and 2900 Hz

Speech Level   50%

Sets the voice synthesizer audio output level from 0 to
100% in 1% steps. (default: 50%)

Side Tone Level   50%

Sets the side tone output level from 0 to 100% in 1%
steps. (default: 50%)

Side Tone Level Limit   ON

Turns the side tone output level limiting capability from
ON and OFF. (default: ON)

Beep Level   50%

Sets the key-touch beep output level from 0 to 100%
in 1% steps. (default: 50%)

Beep Level Limit   ON

Turns the key-touch beep output level limiting capa-
bility from ON and OFF. (default: ON)

■ Level set mode (continued)

Phones Level Ratio   ▭▭▭▭▭ 1.00

Sets the ratio for audio output level from the head-
phone toward to the internal speaker within 0.60 to
1.40 range in 0.01 steps. (default: 1.00)

Phone L/R Mix   OFF

Selects the headphone audio output.

- OFF : Outputs the main band's audio from the left, and sub band's audio from the right. (default)
- ON : Outputs the mixed audio.

■ ACC set mode
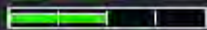
ACC–A AF/SQL Output Select   MAIN

Selects the desired band for the audio and squelch
signals output from [ACC1–A] (Audio: pin 5, Squelch:
pin 6) from MAIN and SUB.

- MAIN : Main band's AF and squelch signals are output from [ACC1–A]. (default)
- SUB   : Sub band's AF and squelch signals are output from [ACC1–A].

ACC–B AF/SQL Output Select   SUB

Selects the desired band for the audio and squelch
signals output from [ACC1–B] (Audio: pin 5, Squelch:
pin 6) from MAIN and SUB.

- MAIN : Main band's AF and squelch signals are output from [ACC1–A].
- SUB   : Sub band's AF and squelch signals are output from [ACC1–A]. (default)

ACC–A AF Output Level   50%

Sets the desired audio output level, output from
[ACC1–A], within 0 to 100% in 1% steps.

- Outputs approx. 200 mV at 50% (default) setting.

ACC–B AF Output Level   50%

Sets the desired audio output level, output from
[ACC1–B], within 0 to 100% in 1% steps.

- Outputs approx. 200 mV at 50% (default) setting.

S/PDIF Output Level   100%

Sets the desired output level of [S/P DIF], within 0 to
100% in 1% steps. (default: 100%)

ACC–A MOD Level   50%

Sets the desired audio input level for modulation from
[ACC1–A].

- Approx. 100 mV at 50% (default) setting.

■ ACC set mode (continued)

ACC–B MOD Level 50%

Sets the desired audio input level for modulation from [ACC1–B].

• Approx. 100 mV at 50% (default) setting.

S/PDIF MOD Level 50%

Sets the desired input level for modulation from [S/P DIF], within 0 to 100% in 1% steps. (default: 50%)

DATA OFF MOD MIC,ACC–A,ACC–B

Selects the desired connector(s) for modulation input when data mode is not in use.

- MIC : Use the signals from [MIC].
- ACC-A : Use the signals from [ACC1–A] (pin 4).
- ACC-B : Use the signals from [ACC1–B] (pin 4).
- MIC,ACC-A : Use the signals from [MIC] and [ACC1–A] (pin 4).
- MIC,ACC-B : Use the signals from [MIC] and [ACC1–B] (pin 4).
- ACC-A,ACC–B : Use the signals from [ACC1–A] and [ACC1–B] (pin 4).
- MIC,ACC-A,ACC–B : Use the signals from [MIC], [ACC1–A] and [ACC1–B] (pin 4). (default)
- S/P DIF : Use the signals from [S/P DIF].

DATA1 MOD ACC–A

Selects the desired connector(s) for modulation input when data 1 mode (D1) is in use.

- MIC : Use the signals from [MIC].
- ACC-A : Use the signals from [ACC1–A] (pin 4). (default)
- ACC-B : Use the signals from [ACC1–B] (pin 4).
- MIC,ACC-A : Use the signals from [MIC] and [ACC1–A] (pin 4).
- MIC,ACC-B : Use the signals from [MIC] and [ACC1–B] (pin 4).
- ACC-A,ACC–B : Use the signals from [ACC1–A] and [ACC1–B] (pin 4).
- MIC,ACC-A,ACC–B : Use the signals from [MIC], [ACC1–A] and [ACC1–B] (pin 4).
- S/P DIF : Use the signals from [S/P DIF].

■ ACC set mode (continued)

DATA2 MOD	ACC–B
Selects the desired connector(s) for modulation input when data 2 mode (D2) is in use.	• MIC : Use the signals from [MIC]. • ACC-A : Use the signals from [ACC1–A] (pin 4). • ACC-B : Use the signals from [ACC1–B] (pin 4). (default) • MIC,ACC-A : Use the signals from [MIC] and [ACC1–A] (pin 4). • MIC,ACC-B : Use the signals from [MIC] and [ACC1–B] (pin 4). • ACC-A,ACC–B : Use the signals from [ACC1–A] and [ACC1–B] (pin 4). • MIC,ACC-A,ACC–B : Use the signals from [MIC], [ACC1–A] and [ACC1–B] (pin 4). • S/P DIF : Use the signals from [S/P DIF].

DATA3 MOD	ACC–A,ACC–B
Selects the desired connector(s) for modulation input when data 3 mode (D3) is in use.	• MIC : Use the signals from [MIC]. • ACC-A : Use the signals from [ACC1–A] (pin 4). • ACC-B : Use the signals from [ACC1–B] (pin 4). • MIC,ACC-A : Use the signals from [MIC] and [ACC1–A] (pin 4). • MIC,ACC-B : Use the signals from [MIC] and [ACC1–B] (pin 4). • ACC-A,ACC–B : Use the signals from [ACC1–A] and [ACC1–B] (pin 4). (default) • MIC,ACC-A,ACC–B : Use the signals from [MIC], [ACC1–A] and [ACC1–B] (pin 4). • S/P DIF : Use the signals from [S/P DIF].

ACC–A BAND Voltage Output	TX
Selects the desired band for the operating frequency band control signal output from [ACC2–A] (pin 4).	• MAIN : Outputs the band signal displayed in main readout. • SUB : Outputs the band signal displayed in sub readout. • TX : Outputs the band signal, that can be transmitted. (default)

ACC–B BAND Voltage Output	TX
Selects the desired band for the operating frequency band control signal output from (pin 4).	• MAIN : Outputs the band signal displayed in main readout. • SUB : Outputs the band signal displayed in sub readout. • TX : Outputs the band signal, that can be transmitted. (default)

■ ACC set mode (continued)

SEND Relay Type	Lead

Selects the switching relay type for [RELAY] from Lead and MOS-FET.
Select the suitable relay type when connecting a non-Icom linear amplifier.
	• Lead : Use mechanical relay.
	  (16 V DC/0.5 A max.; default)
	• MOS-FET : Use semiconductor type relay.
	  (200 mA/250 V max.)

External Meter Output (M)	Auto
Selects the desired item for an external meter indication (main readout).	• Auto : Outputs the receiving signal strength level during receive, and outputs the selected content's level, selected with [METER], during transmit. (default) • S(MAIN) : Outputs the receiving signal strength level during receive. • Po : Outputs the transmitting power level during transmit. • SWR : Outputs the VSWR level during transmit. • ALC : Outputs the ALC level during transmit. • COMP : Outputs the compression level during transmit. • V_D : Outputs the drain's terminal voltage of the final FETs. • I_D : Outputs the drain's current of the final FETs.
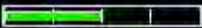
External Meter Output (S)	Auto
Selects the desired item for an external meter indication (sub readout).	• Auto : Outputs the receiving signal strength level during receive, and outputs the selected content's level, selected with [METER], during transmit. (default) • S(MAIN) : Outputs the receiving signal strength level during receive. • Po : Outputs the transmitting power level during transmit. • SWR : Outputs the VSWR level during transmit. • ALC : Outputs the ALC level during transmit. • COMP : Outputs the compression level during transmit. • V_D : Outputs the drain's terminal voltage of the final FETs. • I_D : Outputs the drain's current of the final FETs.

External Meter Level (M)	50%
Sets the output level for an external meter indication (main readout) with in 0 to 100% range in 1% steps.	• Approx. 2.5 V at 50% (default) setting for full-scale indication. (4.7 kΩ impedance)

External Meter Level (S)	50%
Sets the output level for an external meter indication (sub readout) with in 0 to 100% range in 1% steps.	• Approx. 2.5 V at 50% (default) setting for full-scale indication. (4.7 kΩ impedance)

■ ACC set mode (continued)

REF IN/OUT	OFF

Selects the transceiver's reference signal condition from IN, OFF and OUT.

- IN : Use an external reference signal for the IC-7800.
- OFF : Not input/output the reference signal. (default)
- OUT : Outputs the IC-7800 reference signal to externally connected equipment(s) for their reference.

NOTE: When the applied reference signal has off-frequency, the IC-7800 may not work properly.

REF Adjust	50%

Adjusts the internal reference signal frequency within 0 to 100% range in 1% steps during frequency calibration. (default: 50%)

■ Display set mode

LCD Unit Bright ▬▬▬ 50%

Adjusts the LCD unit brightness within 0 (dark) to
100% (bright) range in 1% steps. (default: 50%)

Backlight (Switches) ▬▬▬ 80

Adjusts the switch indicators brightness within 1 (dark)
to 100 (bright) range in 1 steps. (default: 80)

Display Type A

Selects the desired display type from A, B and C.
(default: A)

Display Font Italic (1)

Selects the desired font for frequency readout from
Italic (1), Italic (2), Italic (3), Italic (4), Round (1),
Round (2), Round (3), Shadow (1), Shadow (2),
Shadow (3), Qubic (1), Qubic (2), Qubic (3), Qubic
(4), IC-780 (1), IC-780 (2), IC-780 (3) and IC-780 (4).
(default: Italic (1))

Text Font Normal

Selects the desired font for the indications other than
frequency readout from Normal and Slim.
(default: Normal)

Meter Type (Normal Screen) Standard

Selects the desired S/RF meter type during normal
screen indication from Standard, Edgewise and Bar.
(default: Standard)

Meter Type (Wide Screen) Edgewise

Selects the desired S/RF meter type during wide
screen or mini scope indication from Edgewise and
Bar. (default: Edgewise)

Meter Peak Hold (Bar) ON

Turns the meter peak hold function ON and OFF.
(default: ON)
This function is used for the bar meter only.

■ Display set mode (continued)

Memory Name	ON

Sets the memory name indication, during memory mode operation, ON and OFF. (default: ON)

• ON : The programmed memory name is displayed above the frequency indication.
• OFF : No memory name is displayed even a memory name is programmed.

APF–Width Popup (APF OFF➔ON)	ON

Turns the pop-up indication capability when the filter width for the APF is changed from ON and OFF. (default: ON)

MN–Q Popup (MN OFF➔ON)	ON

Turns the pop-up indication capability when the notch filter width is changed from ON and OFF. (default: ON)

External Display	OFF

Select "ON" when the external display is connected. (default: OFF)

• At least 800×600 pixel resolution is required for the display.

External Display Sync Pulse	H

Selects the suitable pulse level for the connected external display from H and L. (default: H)

Opening Message	ON

Turns the opening message screen indication capability ON and OFF. (default: ON)

My Call	

Sets the desired 10-character text, such as your call sign, name, etc.
The set text is indicated in the opening screen.

Capital letters, small letters, numerals, some symbols (– / . @) and spaces can be used.

① Push [F-5•EDIT] to select the name edit condition.
   • The 1st character and cursor blink.
② Push [ABC], [abc], [123] or [Symbol] to select the character group, then rotate the main dial to select the character.
   • Push [ABC] or [abc] to toggle capital and small letters.
   • Push [123] or [Symbol] to toggle numerals and symbols.
   • Push [F-1•◀] or [F-2•▶] for cursor movement.
   • Push [F-3•DEL] to delete the selected character.
   • Push [F-4•SPACE] to input a space.
   • Pushing the transceiver's keypad, [0]–[9], can also enter numerals.
③ Push [EXIT/SET] to set the name.

SET MODE # ■ Miscellaneous (Others) set mode

Calibration Marker   OFF

This item is used for a simple frequency check of the transceiver. (default: OFF)
See p. 13-5 for calibration procedure.

〃 **NOTE:** Turn the calibration marker OFF after
〃 checking the frequency of the transceiver.

Beep (Confirmation)   ON

A beep sounds each time a switch is pushed to confirm it. This function can be turned OFF for silent operation. (default: ON)

The beep output level can be set in level set mode.
(p. 12-5)

Beep (Band Edge)   ON

A beep sounds when an operating frequency enters or exits an amateur band. This functions independent of the confirmation beep setting (above). (default: ON)

The beep output level can be set in level set mode.
(p. 12-5)

Beep Sound (MAIN)   1000Hz

Sets the desired key-touch beep sound frequency during main readout operation within 500 to 2000 Hz in 10 Hz steps. (default: 1000 Hz)

Set the different frequency from "Beep Sound (SUB)" as below to distinguish between main and sub.

Beep Sound (SUB)   1000Hz

Sets the desired key-touch beep sound frequency during sub readout operation within 500 to 2000 Hz in 10 Hz steps. (default: 1000 Hz)

Set the different frequency from "Beep Sound (MAIN)" as above to distinguish between main and sub.

Quick Dualwatch   ON

When this item is set to ON, pushing [DUALWATCH] for 1 sec. sets the sub readout frequency to the main readout frequency and activates dualwatch operation. (default: ON)

See p. 5-16 for details.

12-13

■ Miscellaneous (Others) set mode (continued)

Quick SPLIT	ON

When this item is set to ON, pushing [SPLIT] for 1 sec. sets the sub readout frequency to the main readout frequency and activates split operation. (default: ON)

See p. 6-7 for details.

FM SPLIT Offset(HF)	−0.100MHz

Sets the offset (difference between transmit and receive frequencies) for the quick split function. However, this setting is used for HF bands in FM mode only and is used to input the repeater offset for an HF band.

The offset frequency can be set from −9.999 MHz to +9.999 MHz in 1 kHz steps. (default: −0.100 MHz)

FM SPLIT Offset(50M)	−0.500MHz

Sets the offset (difference between transmit and receive frequencies) for the quick split function. However, this setting is used for 50 MHz band FM mode only, and is used to input the repeater offset for the 50 MHz band.

The offset frequency can be set from −9.999 MHz to +9.999 MHz in 1 kHz steps. (default: −0.500 MHz)

SPLIT LOCK	OFF

When this item is ON, the main dial can be used to adjust the transmit frequency while pushing [XFC] even while the lock function is activated. (default: OFF)

See pgs. 6-6, 6-7 for split frequency operation details.

Tuner (Auto Start)	OFF

The internal antenna tuner has an automatic start capability which starts tuning if the SWR is higher than 1.5–3:1.

• OFF : The tuner remains OFF even when the SWR is poor (1.5–3:1). (default)
• ON : Automatic tune starts even when the tuner is turned OFF during HF bands operation.

Tuner (PTT Start)	OFF

Tuning of the internal antenna tuner can be started automatically at the moment the PTT is pushed after the operating frequency is changed (more than 1% from last-tuned frequency). (default: OFF)

■ **Miscellaneous (Others) set mode (continued)**

Transverter Function	Auto
Selects the transverter operation condition from Auto and ON. (default: Auto)	• ON : Turn the transverter operation ON. • Auto : The transceiver turns into transverter operation condition when 2 to 13.8 V DC is applied to [ACC2–A/B] pin 6.

Transverter Offset	16.000MHz (14.016.72 ➜ 30.016.72)
Sets the desired offset frequency for the transverter operation within 0.000 to 99.999 MHz in 1 kHz steps. (default: 16.000 MHz)	

RTTY Mark Frequency	2125
Selects the RTTY mark frequency. RTTY mark frequency is switched between 1275, 1615 and 2125 Hz. (default: 2125 Hz) 2125 Hz is automatically selected when the internal RTTY decoder is used.	

RTTY Shift Width	170
Selects the RTTY shift width. There are 3 selectable values: 170, 200 and 425 Hz. (default: 170 Hz) 170 Hz is automatically selected when the internal RTTY decoder is used.	

RTTY Keying Polarity	Normal
Selects the RTTY keying polarity. Normal or reverse keying polarity can be selected. (default: Normal)	When reverse polarity is selected, Mark and Space are reversed. • Normal : Key open/close = Mark/Space • Reverse : Key open/close = Space/Mark

PSK Tone Frequency	1500
Selects the desired PSK tone frequency for the PSK reception from 1000, 1500 and 2000 Hz. (default: 1500 Hz)	

SPEECH Language	English
Selects the speech language from English and Japanese. (default: English)	

SPEECH Speed	HIGH
Selects the speech speed from HIGH (faster) and LOW (slower). (default: HIGH)	

■ Miscellaneous (Others) set mode (continued)

SPEECH S-Level	ON

The IC-7800 speech processor has frequency, mode and signal level announcement. Signal level announcement can be deactivated if desired.
(default: ON)

When "OFF" is selected, the signal level is not announced.

SPEECH [MODE] Switch	OFF

Turns the operating mode speech capability when a mode switch is pushed from ON and OFF.
(default: OFF)

When "ON" is selected, the selected operating mode is announced when a mode switch is pushed.

Memopad Numbers	5

Sets the number of memo pad channels available. 5 or 10 memo pads can be set. (default: 5)

MAIN DIAL Operation	MAIN/SUB

Selects the main dial function from MAIN and MAIN/SUB. (default: MAIN/SUB)

• MAIN   : The main dial functions only when accessing to main readout.
• MAIN/SUB : The main dial functions when accessing to main readout, as well as when accessing to sub readout with [SUB] switch operation.

MAIN DIAL Auto TS	HIGH

Sets the auto tuning step function for the main dial. When rotating the main dial rapidly, the tuning step automatically changes several times as selected.

There are 2 type of auto tuning steps: HIGH (Fastest) and LOW (Faster). (default: HIGH)

• HIGH   : Auto tuning step is turned ON. Fastest tuning step during rapid rotation. (default)
• LOW   : Auto tuning step is turned ON. Faster tuning step during rapid rotation.
• OFF   : Auto tuning step is turned OFF.

SUB DIAL Auto TS	HIGH

Sets the auto tuning step function for the sub dial. When rotating the sub dial rapidly, the tuning step automatically changes several times as selected.

There are 2 type of auto tuning steps: HIGH (Fastest) and LOW (Faster). (default: HIGH)

• HIGH   : Auto tuning step is turned ON. Fastest tuning step during rapid rotation. (default)
• LOW   : Auto tuning step is turned ON. Faster tuning step during rapid rotation.
• OFF   : Auto tuning step is turned OFF.

■ **Miscellaneous (Others) set mode (continued)**

MIC Up/Down Speed	HIGH
Sets the rate at which frequencies are scanned when the microphone [UP]/[DN] switches are pushed and held. High or low can be selected.	• HIGH : High speed (default; 50 tuning steps/sec.) • LOW : Low speed (25 tuning steps/sec.)

Quick RIT/ΔTX Clear	OFF
Selects the RIT/ΔTX frequency clearing instruction with the [CLEAR] switch.	• ON : Clears the RIT/ΔTX frequency when [CLEAR] is pushed momentarily. • OFF : Clears the RIT/ΔTX frequency when [CLEAR] is pushed for 1 sec. (default)

[NOTCH] Switch (SSB)	Auto/Manual
Selects usable notch function for SSB mode operation from Auto, Manual and Auto/Manual.	• Auto : The auto notch can only be used. • Manual : The manual notch can only be used. • Auto/Manual : Both the auto and manual notch can be used. (default)

[NOTCH] Switch (AM)	Auto/Manual
Selects usable notch function for AM mode operation from Auto, Manual and Auto/Manual.	• Auto : The auto notch can only be used. • Manual : The manual notch can only be used. • Auto/Manual : Both the auto and manual notch can be used. (default)

DIGI–SEL VR Operation	DIGI–SEL
Selects [DIGI-SEL] control function from DIGI-SEL and APF.	• DIGI-SEL : [DIGI-SEL] control functions as the digital selector operation. (default) • APF : [DIGI-SEL] control functions as the audio peak filter adjustment.

FILTER Screen MAIN/SUB Select	Auto (by FILTER,PBT Operation)
Selects filter set screen indication condition from Fix and Auto (by FILTER,PBT Operation).	• Fix : When filter screen accessed with the main band's [FILTER] switch, the screen shows main band's filter width and PBT conditions only; when filter set screen accessed with the sub band's [FILTER] switch, the screen shows sub band's filter width and PBT conditions only. • Auto (by FILTER,PBT Operation) : Filter set screen indication can be switched between main and sub bands filter width and PBT conditions when either band's [FILTER] switch or [TWIN PBT] control is operated. (default)

■ Miscellaneous (Others) set mode (continued)

SSB/CW Synchronous Tuning   OFF

Selects the displayed frequency shift function from ON and OFF. (default: OFF)

When this function is activated, the receiving signal can be kept to receive even when the operating mode is changed between SSB and CW.

▨ The frequency shifting value may differ according to the CW pitch setting.

- ON   : The displayed frequency shifts when the operating mode is changed between SSB and CW.
- OFF : The displayed frequency does not shift.

CW Normal Side   LSB

Selects the carrier point of CW mode from LSB and USB. (default: LSB)

MIC AF Out   MAIN+SUB

Selects the desired band(s) for audio output from [MIC] connector (pin 8) from MAIN+SUB and SUB. (default: MAIN+SUB)

- MAIN+SUB   : Outputs both main and sub bands audio.
- SUB   : Outputs sub band audio only.

External Keypad (VOICE)   OFF

Sets the external keypad for voice memory transmission capability ON and OFF.

See page 2-6 for the equivalent circuit of an external keypad and connection.

- ON   : Pushing one of external keypad switches, transmits the desired voice memory contents during a phone mode operation.
- OFF : External keypad does not function. (default)

External Keypad (KEYER)   OFF

Sets the external keypad for keyer memory transmission capability ON and OFF.

See page 2-6 for the equivalent circuit of an external keypad and connection.

- ON   : Pushing one of external keypad switches, transmits the desired keyer memory contents during CW mode operation.
- OFF : External keypad does not function. (default)

CI-V Baud Rate   Auto

sets the data transfer rate. 300, 1200, 4800, 9600, 19200 bps and "Auto" are available. (default: Auto)

When "Auto" is selected, the baud rate is automatically set according to the connected controller or remote controller.

■ Miscellaneous (Others) set mode (continued)

CI-V Address   6Ah

To distinguish equipment, each CI-V transceiver has its own Icom standard address in hexadecimal code. The IC-7800's address is 6Ah.

When 2 or more IC-7800's are connected to an optional CT-17 CI-V LEVEL CONVERTER, rotate the main dial to select a different address for each IC-7800 in the range 01h to 7Fh.

CI-V Transceive   ON

Transceive operation is possible with the IC-7800 connected to other Icom HF transceivers or receivers.

When "ON" is selected, changing the frequency, operating mode, etc. on the IC-7800 automatically changes those of connected transceivers (or receivers) and vice versa.

RS-232C Function   CI-V

Select [RS-232C] connector output data format from CI-V and Decode.

• CI-V   : Outputs data in CI-V format. (default)
• Decode : Outputs decoded contents in ASCII code format.

Decode Baud Rate   9600

Selects data transmission speed (Baud rate) when "Decode" is selected in "RS-232C Function" above from 300, 1200, 4800, 9600 and 19200 bps. (default: 9600)

Keyboard Type   Japanese

Selects the connected keyboard type from Japanese and English. (default: Japanese)

Keyboard Repeat Delay   250ms

Sets the time period for delay within 100 to 1000 msec. in 50 msec. steps. (default: 250 msec.)

When a key of the connected keyboard is pressed and held for the set period, the character is input continuously.

■ Miscellaneous (others) set mode (continued)

Keyboard Repeat Rate	10.9cps

Sets the repeating rate for the connected keyboard within 2.0 to 30.0 cps in 0.1 cps steps.
(default: 10.9 cps)   *cps=character per second

When a key of the connected keyboard is pressed and held, the character is repeatedly input with the set speed.

IP Address (Valid after Reboot)	192.168. 0. 1

Sets IP address for the IC-7800.
Turn the transceiver power OFF then ON to effective the setting.

Subnet Mask (Valid after Reboot)	255.255.255. 0 (24bit)

Sets subnet mask for the IC-7800.
Turn the transceiver power OFF then ON to effective the setting.

■ CF card set menu

◇ CF card set screen arrangement

• **CF card set menu**
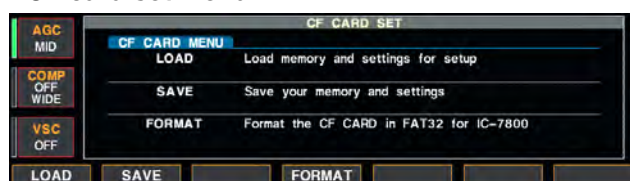
• **Format menu** (p. 12-26)
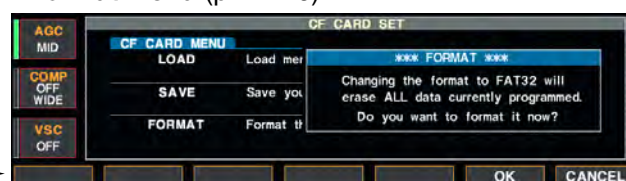
• **Setting load screen** (p. 12-24)
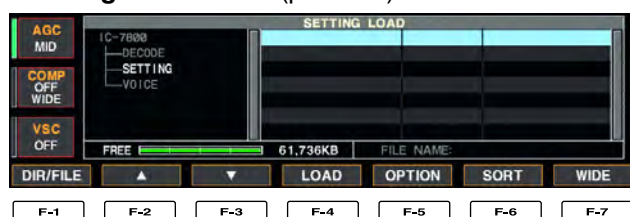
• **Setting save screen** (p. 12-23)
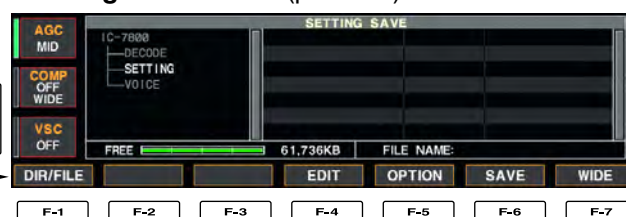
• **Load option set mode** (p. 12-22)
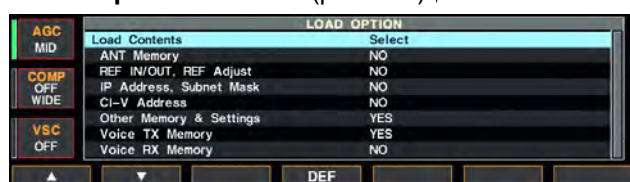
• **Save option set mode** (p. 12-21)
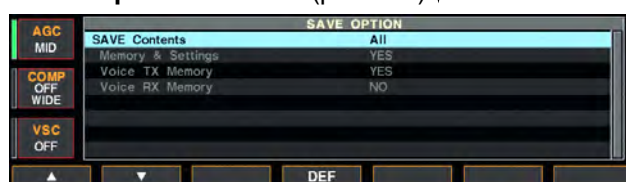
◇ Save option set mode

SAVE Contents   **All**

Selects file saving condition from All and Select. (default: All)	• All : Saves the all following contents. The following items cannot be selected. • Select : Saves the selected contents only.

Memory & Settings   **YES**

Selects memory channel contents and other settings saving condition YES and NO. (default: YES).	• YES : Saves memory channel contents and settings of miscellaneous (Other) set mode. • NO : Not saves them.

Voice TX Memory   **YES**

Selects the voice TX memory saving condition YES and NO. (default: YES).	• YES : Saves the voice TX memory. • NO : Not saves.

Voice RX Memory   **NO**

Selects the voice RX memory saving condition YES and NO. (default: NO).	• YES : Saves the voice RX memory. • NO : Not saves.

12 SET MODE

◇ Load option set mode

Load Contents	Select
Selects file loading condition from All and Select. (default: Select)	• All : Loads and sets the all following contents. The following items cannot be selected. • Select : Loads and sets the selected contents only.

ANT Memory	NO
Selects the antenna memory setting loading condition YES and NO. (default: NO).	• YES : Loads and sets the antenna memory. • NO : Use the original antenna memory setting.

REF IN/OUT, REF Adjust	NO
Selects the reference signal setting loading condition YES and NO. (default: NO).	• YES : Loads and sets the reference signal setting. • NO : Use the original reference signal setting.

IP Address, Subnet Mask	NO
Selects the IP address and subnet mask setting loading condition YES and NO. (default: NO).	• YES : Loads and sets the IP address and subnet mask setting. • NO : Use the original IP address and subnet mask setting.

CI-V Address	NO
Selects the CI-V address setting loading condition YES and NO. (default: NO).	• YES : Loads and sets the CI-V address setting. • NO : Use the original CI-V address setting.

Other Memory & Settings	YES
Selects memory channel contents and other settings loading condition YES and NO. (default: YES).	• YES : Loads and sets memory channel contents and other settings. • NO : Use the original memory channel contents and other settings.

Voice TX Memory	YES
Selects the voice TX memory loading condition YES and NO. (default: YES).	• YES : Loads and sets the voice TX memory. • NO : Use the original the voice TX memory.

Voice RX Memory	NO
Selects the voice RX memory loading condition YES and NO. (default: NO).	• YES : Loads and sets the voice RX memory. • NO : Use the original the voice RX memory.

■ **File saving**

[F-4•EDIT] [F-5•OPTION]   [F-7•WIDE]/[F-7•CANCEL]

[F-1•DIR/FILE] [F-6•SAVE]/[F-6•OK] [EXIT/SET] Main dial
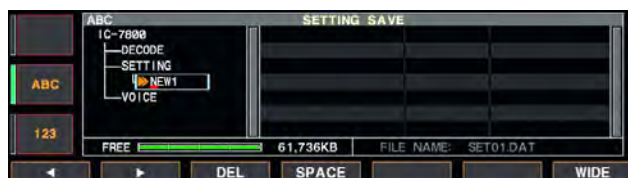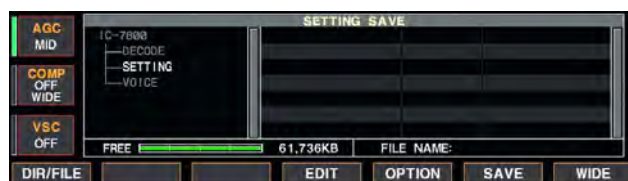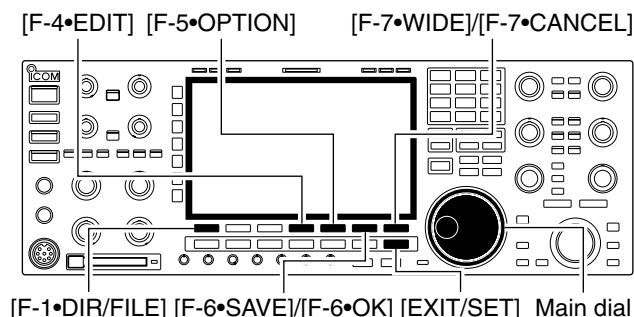
Memory channel contents, set mode settings, etc. can be saved into the CF (Compact Flash) memory card for backup.

① During set mode menu screen indication, push [F-7•CF CARD] to select CF card set menu screen.
② Push [F-2•SAVE] to select setting save screen.
③ Change the following conditions if desired.

   • **File name:**
      ⑴ Push [F-4•EDIT] to select file name edit condition.
         • Push [F-1• DIR/FILE] several times to select the file name, if necessary.
      ⑵ Push [ABC], [123] or [Symbol] to select the character group, then rotate the main dial to select the character.
         • [ABC] : A to Z (capital letters); [123]: 0 to 9 (numerals); [Symbol]: ! # $ % & ' ` ^ + − = ( ) [ ] { } _ ~ @ can be selected.
         • Push [F-1•◄] to move the cursor left, push [F-2•►] to move the cursor right, push [F-3•DEL] to delete a character and push [F-4•SPACE] to insert a space.
      ⑶ Push [EXIT/SET] to set the file name.

   • **Save option**
      ⑴ Push [F-5•OPTION] to enter save option set mode.
      ⑵ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select the item, then rotate the main dial to select the desired setting. (see p. 12-21 for details)
         • "Text" is the default setting.
         • Push [F-4•DEF] for 1 sec. to select the default setting.
      ⑶ Push [EXIT/SET] to return to the previous indication.

   • **Saving location**
      ⑴ Push [F-1•DIR/FILE] to select tree view screen.
      ⑵ Select the desired directory or folder in the CF memory card.
         • Push [F-4•◄ ►] to select the upper directory.
         • Push [F-2•▲] or [F-3•▼] to select folder in the same directory.
         • Push [F-4•◄ ►] for 1 sec. to select a folder in the directory.
         • Push [F-5•REN/DEL] to rename the folder.
         • Push [F-5•REN/DEL] for 1 sec. to delete the folder.
         • Push [F-6•MAKE] for 1 sec. to making a new folder. (Edit the name with the same manner as the "• File name" above.)
      ⑶ Push [F-1•DIR/FILE] twice to select the file name.
④ Push [F-6•SAVE].
   • Confirmation screen appears.
⑤ Push [F-6•OK] to save.
   • After the saving is completed, return to CF card set menu automatically.

■ File loading

[F-4•LOAD] [F-5•OPTION]   [F-7•WIDE]/[F-7•CANCEL]
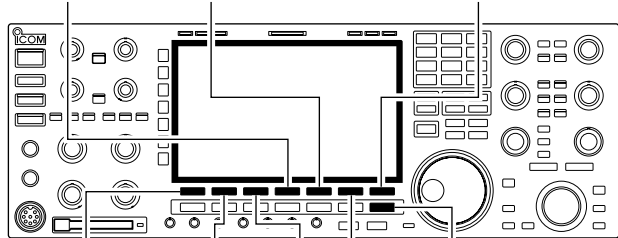
[F-1•DIR/FILE] [F-2•▲] [F-3•▼]   [EXIT/SET]

[F-6•SORT]/[F-6•OK]
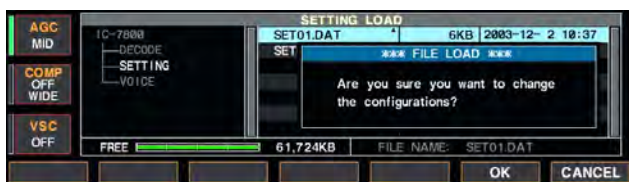
By loading the saved setting file from the CF card, you can easily set up another IC-7800— several operators settings can easily be re-set to one IC-7800.

① During set mode menu screen indication, push [F-7•CF CARD] to select CF card set menu screen.

② Push [F-1•LOAD] to select setting load screen.
• The indicator beside the CF card slot blinks.
• After the CF card contents are displayed, the indicator goes off.

③ Push [F-5•OPTION] to select load option set mode, then set the desired loading conditions, if desired.
• See page 12-22 for details.

④ Push [F-2•▲] or [F-3•▼] to select the desired setting file.

⑤ Push [F-4•LOAD].
• Confirmation screen appears.

⑥ Push [F-6•OK] to starts loading.
• After the lading is completed, the message dialog, "Reboot the IC-7800," appears.

⑦ Turn the transceiver power OFF then ON to effective the setting.

■ Changing the file name

[F-4•◄ ►] [F-5•REN/DEL]   [F-7•WIDE]/[F-7•CANCEL]

[F-1•DIR/FILE] [F-2•▲] [F-3•▼]   [EXIT/SET]
[F-6•MAKE]
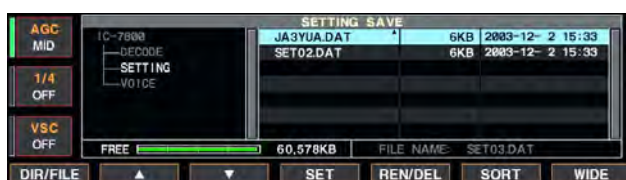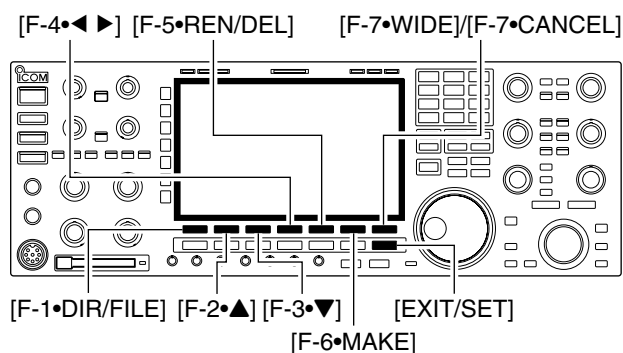
The file name, saved in the CF card, can be re-named from the transceiver as desired.

① During setting save screen indication, push [F-1•DIR/FILE] to selects tree view screen.
  • Push [F-2•▲] or [F-3•▼] to select the desired folder.
  • "DECODE," "SETTING" and "VOICE" folders are available as the default.
  • After the folder is selected, push [F-2•◄ ►] for 1 sec. to display content folder(s), if available.
② Push [F-1•DIR/FILE] to select file list screen.
③ Push [F-2•▲] or [F-3•▼] to select the desired file.
④ Push [F-5•REN/DEL] momentarily to select the file name edit condition.
⑤ Push [ABC], [123] or [Symbol] to select the character group, then rotate the main dial to select the character.
  • [ABC] : A to Z (capital letters); [123]: 0 to 9 (numerals); [Symbol]: ! # $ % & ' ` ^ + – = ( ) [ ] { } _ ~ @ can be selected.
  • Push [F-1•◄] to move the cursor left, push [F-2•►] to move the cursor right, push [F-3•DEL] to delete a character and push [F-4•SPACE] to insert a space.
  • Pushing the transceiver's keypad, [0]–[9], can also enter numerals.
⑥ Push [EXIT/SET] to set the file name.

■ Deleting a file

⚠ **RECOMMENDATION!** Deleted setting file never restorable. Confirm the contents before deleting a setting file is recommended.

① During setting save screen indication, push [F-1•DIR/FILE] to select tree view screen.
   • Push [F-2•▲] or [F-3•▼] to select the desired folder.
   • "DECODE," "SETTING" and "VOICE" folders are available as the default.
   • After the folder is selected, push [F-2•◄ ►] for 1 sec. to display content folder(s), if available.
② Push [F-1•DIR/FILE] to select file list screen.
③ Push [F-2•▲] or [F-3•▼] to select the desired file to be deleted.
④ Push [F-5•REN/DEL] for 1 sec.
   • Confirmation screen appears.
⑤ Push [F-6•OK] to delete.
   • After the deleting, return to setting save screen automatically.

■ Formatting the CF card

The all saved data in the CF memory card can be erased.

⚠ **IMPORTANT!** Formatting erases all saved data in the CF memory card. Make a buckup file in your PC, or any other things, is recommended.

① During CF card set menu indication, push [F-4•FORMAT] for 1 sec.
   • Confirmation screen appears.
② Push [F-6•OK] to format.
   • Push [F-7•CANCEL] to cancel.
③ Returns to CF card set menu indication automatically.

MAINTENANCE   Section 13

■ Troubleshooting

The following chart is designed to help you correct problems which are not equipment malfunctions.
If you are unable to locate the cause of a problem or solve it through the use of this chart, contact you nearest Icom Dealer or Service Center.

◇ Transceiver power

PROBLEM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	SOLUTION	REF.
Power does not come on when the [POWER] switch is pushed.	• Power cable is improperly connected. • The internal power supply is turned OFF. • Circuit breaker is activated.	• Re-connect the AC power cable correctly. • Turn the internal power supply ON. • Check for the cause, then re-set the circuit breaker.	p. 2-4 p. 3-2 —

◇ Transmit and receive

PROBLEM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	SOLUTION	REF.
No sounds come out from the speaker.	• Volume level is too low. • The squelch is closed. • The transceiver is in transmitting condition.	• Rotate [AF] clockwise to obtain a suitable listening level. • Turn [SQL] to 10 o'clock position to open the squelch. • Push [TRANSMIT] to receive or check the SEND line of an external unit, if connected.	p. 3-9 p. 3-9 p. 3-12
Sensitivity is too low, and only strong signals are audible.	• The antenna is not connected properly. • The antenna for another band is selected. • The antenna is not properly tuned. • The attenuator is activated.	• Re-connect to the antenna connector. • Select an antenna suitable for the operating frequency. • Push [TUNER] for 1 sec. to manually tune the antenna. • Push [ATT] several times to select "ATT OFF."	— p. 10-2 p. 10-5 p. 5-9
Received audio is unclear or distorted.	• Wrong operating mode is selected. • PBT function is activated. • Noise blanker is turned ON when receiving a strong signal. • Preamp is activated. • The noise reduction is activated and the [NR] control is too far clockwise.	• Select a suitable operating mode. • Push [PBT CLR] for 1 sec. to reset the function. • Push [NB] to turn the noise blanker OFF. • Push [P.AMP] once or twice to turn the function OFF. • Set the [NR] control for maximum readability.	p. 3-8 p. 5-12 p. 5-17 p. 5-9 p. 5-18
The [ANT] switch does not function	• The antenna switch has not been activated.	• Set the antenna switch in set mode to "Auto" or "Manual."	p. 10-4
Transmitting is impossible.	• The operating frequency is not set to a ham band.	• Set the frequency to a ham band.	p. 3-5
Output power is too low.	• [RF PWR] is set too far counterclockwise • [MIC] is set too far counterclockwise • The antenna for another band is selected. • The antenna is not properly tuned.	• Rotate [RF PWR] clockwise. • Set [MIC] to a suitable position. • Select an antenna suitable for the operating frequency. • Push [TUNER] for 1 sec. to manually tune the antenna.	p. 3-12 p. 3-12 p. 10-2 p. 10-5
No contact possible with another station.	• RIT or ⊿TX function is activated. • Split frequency function and/or dualwatch are activated.	• Push [RIT] or [⊿TX] to turn the function OFF. • Push [SPLIT] and/or [DUALWATCH] to turn the function OFF.	pgs. 5-10, 6-4 pgs. 5-16, 6-4
Transmit signal is unclear or distorted.	• [MIC] is set too far clockwise	• Set [MIC] to a suitable position.	p. 3-12
Repeater cannot be accessed.	• Split frequency function is not activated. • Programmed subaudible tone frequency is wrong.	• Push [SPLIT] to to turn the function ON • Reset the frequency using set mode.	p. 6-6 p. 4-32

◇ **Scanning**

PROBLEM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	SOLUTION	REF.
Programmed scan does not stop.	• Squelch is open.	• Set [SQL] to the threshold point.	p. 3-9
Programmed scan does not start.	• The same frequencies have been programmed in scan edge memory channels P1 and P2.	• Program different frequencies in scan edge memory channel P1 and P2.	p. 8-4
Memory scan does not start	• 2 or more memory channels have not been programmed.	• Program more than 2 memory channels.	p. 8-4
Select memory scan does not start	• 2 or more memory channels have not been designated as select channels.	• Designate more than 2 memory channels as select channels for the scan.	p. 9-7

◇ **Display**

PROBLEM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	SOLUTION	REF.
The displayed frequency does not change properly.	• The dial lock function is activated. • A set mode screen is selected. • The internal CPU has malfunctioned.	• Push [LOCK] to turn the function OFF. • Push [EXIT/SET] several times to exit the set mode screen. • Reset the CPU.	p. 5-18 p. 12-2 p. 13-7

■ Main dial brake adjustment

Light

Heavy
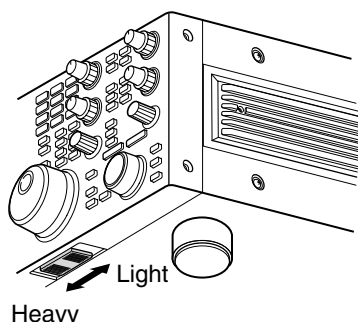
The tension of the main dial may be adjusted to suit you preference.

The brake adjustment is located on the bottom side of the front panel. See the figure at left.

Slide the brake adjustment to comfortable tension level while turing the dial continuously and evenly in one direction.

■ Voice synthesizer operation
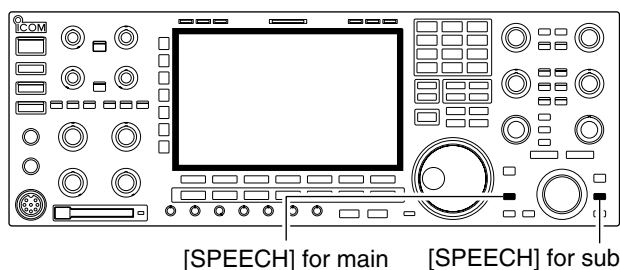
The IC-7800 has built-in voice synthesizer to announce the frequency, mode, etc. (S-meter level can also be announced—p. 12-16) in clear, electronically-generated voice, in English (or Japanese).

➥ Push [SPEECH] to announce the currently selected frequency, etc.
  • Push [SPEECH] for 1 sec. to additionally announce the selected mode.

➥ Pushing a mode switch also announces the appropriate mode. (p. 12-16)

[SPEECH] for main   [SPEECH] for sub

⁄⁄The output level of the voice synthesizer can be adjusted in level set mode. (p. 12-5)

■ SWR reading

[RF PWR] [TRANSMIT] [METER]

[TUNER] [RTTY/PSK] [EXIT/SET]

Better than 1.5:1
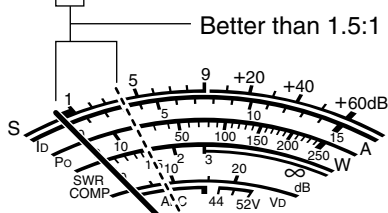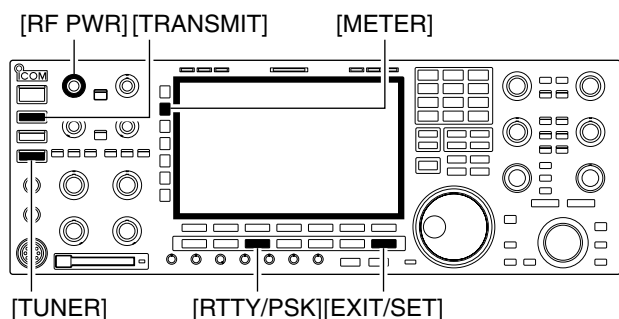
The SWR meter indicates the SWR over the transmission line in all modes.

① Push [TUNER] to turn the antenna tuner OFF.
② Push [METER] for 1 sec. to display multi-function meter.
③ Push [RTTY/PSK] once or twice to select RTTY mode.
④ Push [TRANSMIT].
⑤ Rotate [RF PWR] clockwise past the 12 o'clock position for more than 30 W output power.
⑥ Read the SWR on the SWR meter gage.
⑦ Push [EXIT/SET] to close multi-function meter.

⁂ The built-in antenna tuner matches the transmitter to the antenna when the SWR is lower than 3 : 1.

■ Screen type and font selections

• Screen image example— type C

3 types of screen images and 18 types of frequency readout indication fonts are available in the IC-7800.

① Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close multi-function screen, if necessary.
② Push [F-7•SET] to select set mode menu screen.
③ Push [F-3•DISP] to enter display set mode.
④ Push [F-1•▲] or [F-2•▼] to select "Display Type" item when selecting the screen image, select "Display Font" when selecting the frequency readout indication font.
⑤ Rotate the main dial to select the desired screen image or font.
  • Screen image is selectable from A, B and C.
  • Italic (1)/(2)/(3)/(4), Round (1)/(2)/(3), Shadow (1)/(2)/(3), Qubic (1)/(2)/(3)/(4) and IC-780 (1)/(2)/(3)/(4) are available for the frequency readout font.
⑥ Push [EXIT/SET] twice to exit from display set mode.

■ Frequency calibration (approximate)

A very accurate frequency counter is required to calibrate the frequency of the transceiver. However, a rough check may be performed by receiving radio station WWVH, or other standard frequency signals.

CAUTION: The IC-7800 has been thoroughly adjusted and checked at the factory before being shipped. You should not calibrate frequencies, except for special reasons.

[F-7•SET]

[F-1•▲] [F-2•ACC]/[F-2•▼]   [EXIT/SET] Main dial
[F-5•OTHERS]

• **Calibration marker item**

• **REF Adjust item**
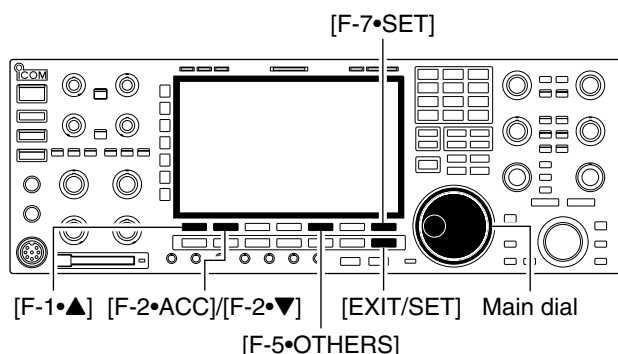
① Push [SSB] to select USB mode.
② Push [PBT CLEAR] for 1 sec. to clear the PBT setting and make sure that the RIT/⊿TX function is not activated.
③ Set the frequency to the standard frequency station minus 1 kHz.
   • When receiving WWVH (15.00000 MHz) as a standard frequency, set the operating frequency for 14.99900 MHz.
   • Other standard frequency can also be used.
④ Push [EXIT/SET] several times to close a multi-function screen, if necessary.
⑤ Push [F-7•SET] to select set mode menu screen.
⑥ Push [F-5•OTHERS] to enter miscellaneous (others) set mode.
⑦ Push [F-1•▲] several times to select the "Calibration Marker" item.
⑧ Rotate the main dial clockwise to turn the calibration marker ON.
⑨ Push [EXIT/SET] once to return to set mode menu screen.
⑩ Push [F-2•ACC] to enter accessory set mode.
⑪ Push [F-2•▼] several times to select the "REF Adjust" item.
⑫ Rotate the main dial to adjust for a zero beat with the received standard signal as shown at left.
   • Zero beat means that two signals are exactly the same frequency, resulting in a single tone being emitted.
⑬ Turn the calibration marker OFF in miscellaneous (others) set mode.
⑭ Push [EXIT/SET] twice to exit set mode.

■ Opening the transceiver's case

Follow the case opening procedures shown here when you want to replace the clock backup battery or circuitry fuse,

CAUTION!: DISCONNECT the AC power cable from the transceiver before performing any work on the transceiver. Otherwise, there is danger of electric shock and/or equipment damage.

CAUTION!: The transceiver weighs approx. 25 kg (55 lb). 2 peoples should be present to lift up or turn over the transceiver.

① Remove the 8 screws from the top of the transceiver and the 6 screws from the sides, then lift up the top cover.
② Turn the transceiver upside down.

CAUTION: NEVER HOLD THE MAIN DIAL OR ANY OTHER KNOBS when the transceiver is upside down. This may damage the transceiver.

③ Remove 7 screws from the bottom, and the 6 screws from the sides, then lift up the bottom cover.
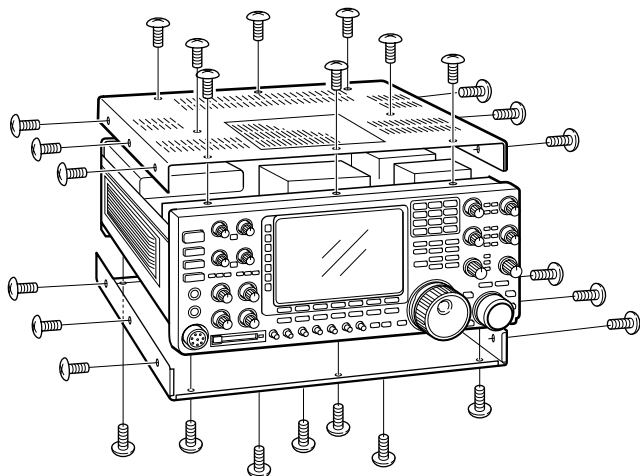
■ Clock backup battery replacement

The IC-7800 has a lithium backup battery (CR2032) inside for clock and timer functions. The usual life of the backup battery is approximately 2 years.

When the backup battery exhausted, the transceiver transmits and receives normally but cannot retain the current time.

WARNING: DISCONNECT the AC power cable from the AC outlet before removing the transceiver's cover.

① Remove the top cover as shown above.
② Replace the clock backup battery, located on the front panel as illustrated at left.
 • Make sure the battery polarity is correct.
③ Return the top cover to the original position.
④ Set the date and time in time set mode. (p. 11-2)
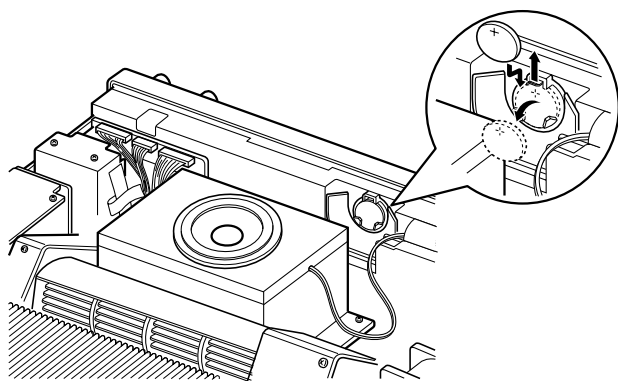
■ Fuse replacement
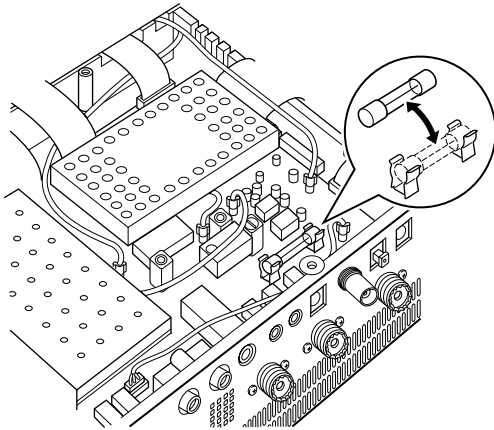
When no external DC output is available from [EXT DC] and ACC connectors, the internal fuse may be damaged. Replace the fuse in this case.

WARNING: DISCONNECT the AC power cable from the AC outlet before removing the transceiver's cover.

① Remove the bottom cover as shown left.
② Replace the damaged fuse with new, rated one (FGB 2 A) as shown at left.
③ Return the bottom cover to the original position.

■ Resetting the CPU

[POWER]   [MW] [F-INP•ENT]
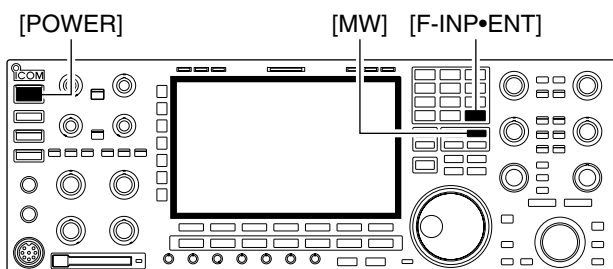
① Turn the main power switch on the rear panel ON.
  • Make sure the transceiver power is still OFF.
② While pushing and holding [F-INP•ENT] and [MW], push [POWER] to turn power ON.
  • The internal CPU is reset.
  • The CPU start up and it takes approx. 5 sec.
  • The transceiver displays its initial VFO frequencies when resetting is complete.
③ Correct the set mode settings after resetting, if desired.

NOTE: Resetting **CLEARS** all programmed contents in memory channels and returns programmed values in set mode to default values.

○
İCOM
IC–7800
ALL CLEAR
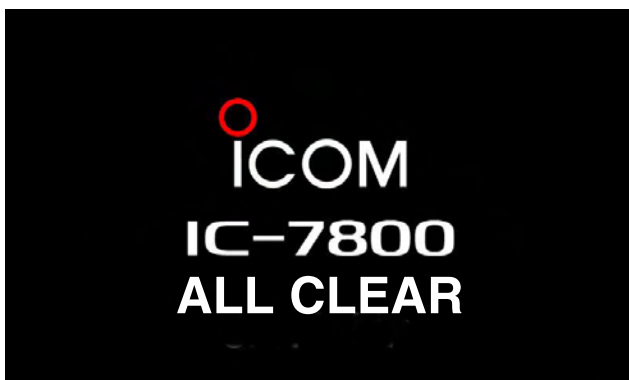
■ About protection indications

The IC-7800 has a 2-step protection function to protect the power amplifiers as follow.

The protector detects the power amplifier temperature and activates when the temperature becomes extremely high.

- **Power down transmission**
  Reduces the transmit output power to 100 W.
  "LMT" appears beside the transmit indicator during transmit.
- **Transmission inhibit**
  Deactivate the transmitter.
  The transmit indicator is displayed in gray during transmit.

When the protector is activated, wait until the power amplifier cools down using the transceiver stand-by condition.

Check the temperature

NOTE: **DO NOT** turn the transceiver power OFF. The internal cooling fan does not function, so it will take longer to cool down.

The power amplifier temperature can be confirmed in multi-function meter, TEMP gauge.

CONTROL COMMAND   Section **14**

■ Remote jack (CI-V) information
◇ CI-V connection example

The transceiver can be connected through an optional CT-17 CI-V LEVEL CONVERTER to a PC equipped with an RS-232C port. The Icom Communications Interface-V (CI-V) controls the following functions of the transceiver.

Up to 4 Icom CI-V transceivers or transceivers can be connected to a PC equipped with an RS-232C port. See pgs. 12-18, 12-19 for setting the CI-V condition using set mode.

◇ Data format

The CI-V system can be operated using the following data formats. Data formats differ according to command numbers. A data area or sub command is added for some commands.

Controller to IC-7800
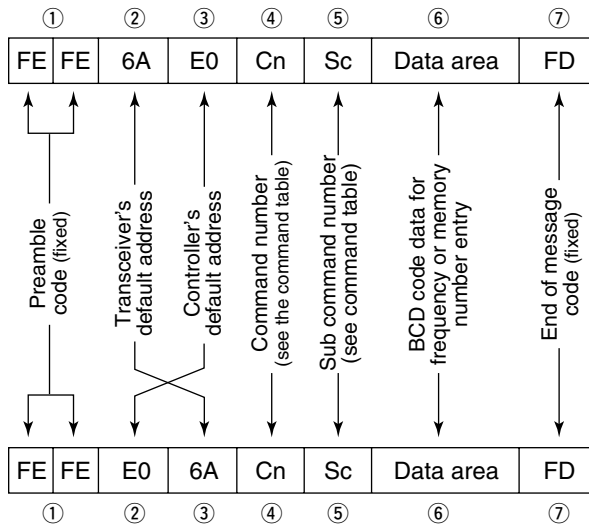
IC-7800 to controller

OK message to controller
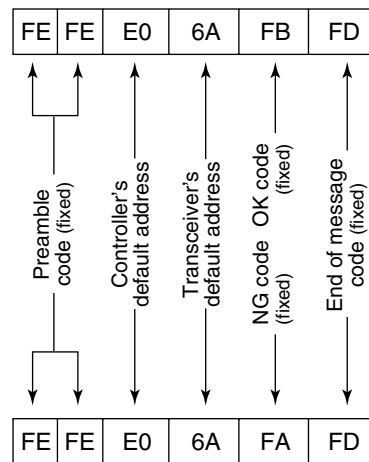
NG message to controller

14-2

◇ Command table

Command	Sub command	Description
00	—	Send frequency data
01	Same as command 06	Send mode data
02	—	Read band edge frequencies
03	—	Read operating frequency
04	—	Read operating mode
05	—	Set operating frequency
06	00 01 02 03 04 05 07 08 12 13	Select LSB Select USB Select AM Select CW Select RTTY Select FM Select CW-R Select RTTY-R Select PSK Select PSK-R
07	— B0 B1 C0 C1 D0 D1	Select VFO mode Exchange main and sub bands Equalize main and sub bands Turn the dualwatch OFF Turn the dualwatch ON Select main band Select sub band
08	— 0001–0101*	Select memory mode Select memory channel *P1=0100, P2=0101
09	—	Memory write
0A	—	Memory to VFO
0B	—	Memory clear
0E	00 01 02 03 12 13 22 23 A1–A7 B0 B1 B2 D0 D3	Scan stop Programmed/memory scan start Programmed scan start ΔF scan start Fine programmed scan start Fine ΔF scan start Memory scan start Select memory scan start Set ΔF scan span (A1=±5 kHz; A2=±10 kHz; A3=±20 kHz; A4=±50 kHz; A5=±100 kHz; A6=±500 kHz; A7=±1 MHz) Set as non-select channel Set as select channel (1=★1; 2=★2; 3=★3; when no data command is specified, the previously set number or "★1" is selected) Set the number for select memory scan (0=ALL; 1=★1; 2=★2; 3=★3) Set scan resume OFF Set scan resume ON
0F	00 01	Turn the split function OFF Turn the split function ON
10	00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08	Select 10 Hz (1 Hz) tuning step Select 100 Hz tuning step Select 1 kHz tuning step Select 5 kHz tuning step Select 9 kHz tuning step Select 10 kHz tuning step Select 12.5 kHz tuning step Select 20 kHz tuning step Select 25 kHz tuning step

Command	Sub command	Description
11	—	Select/read attenuator (0=OFF; 1=3 dB; 2=6 dB; 3=9 dB; 4=12 dB; 5=15 dB; 6=18 dB; 7=21 dB)
12	00 + RX ANT 01 + RX ANT 02 + RX ANT 03 + RX ANT	Select/read ANT1 selection (00=RX ANT OFF; 01=RX ANT ON) Select/read ANT2 selection (00=RX ANT OFF; 01=RX ANT ON) Select/read ANT3 selection (00=RX ANT OFF; 01=RX ANT ON) Select/read ANT4 selection (00=RX ANT OFF; 01=RX ANT ON)
13	00 01 02	Announce with voice synthesizer (00=all data; 01=frequency and S-meter level; 02=receive mode)
14	01 + Level data 02 + Level data 03 + Level data 05 + Level data 06 + Level data 07 + Level data 08 + Level data 09 + Level data 0A + Level data 0B + Level data 0C + Level data 0D + Level data 0E + Level data 0F + Level data 11 + Level data 12 + Level data 13 + Level data 14 + Level data 15 + Level data 16 + Level data 17 + Level data 18 + Level data 19 + Level data	[AF] level setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW) [RF] level setting (0=max. CCW to 255=11 o'clock) [SQL] level setting (0=11 o'clock to 255=max. CW) [APF] level setting (0=Pitch–550 Hz, 128=Pitch, 255=Pitch+550 Hz) [NR] level setting (0=min. to 255=max.) Inside [TWIN PBT] setting or IF shift setting (0=max. CCW, 128=center, 255=max. CW) Outside [TWIN PBT] setting (0=max. CCW, 128=center, 255=max. CW) [CW PITCH] setting (0=300 Hz, 128=600 Hz, 255=900 Hz; 25 Hz steps) [RF POWER] setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW) [MIC] setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW) [KEY SPEED] setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW) [NOTCH] setting (0=low freq. to 255=high freq.) [COMP] setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW) [DELAY] setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW) [AGC] control setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW) [NB] control setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW) [DIGI-SEL] setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW) [DRIVE] setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW) [MONI GAIN] setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW) [VOX GAIN] setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW) [ANTI VOX] setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW) [CONTRAST] setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW) [BRIGHT] setting (0=max. CCW to 255=max. CW)

◇ Command table (continued)

Command	Sub command	Description
15	01	Read squelch condition
	02	Read S-meter level
	11	Read RF power meter
	12	Read SWR meter
	13	Read ALC meter
	14	Read COMP meter
	15	Read V$_D$ meter
	16	Read I$_D$ meter
16	02	Preamp (0=OFF; 1=preamp 1; 2=preamp 2)
	12	AGC selection (0=OFF; 1=Slow; 2=Mid; 3=Fast)
	22	Noise blanker (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	32	Audio peak filter (0=OFF; 1=320 Hz; 2=160 Hz; 3=80 Hz)
	40	Noise reduction (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	41	Auto notch (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	42	Repeater tone (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	43	Tone squelch (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	44	Speech compressor (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	45	Monitor (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	46	VOX function (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	47	Break-in (0=OFF; 1=semi break-in; 2=full break-in)
	48	Manual notch (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	4C	VSC (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	4D	Manual AGC (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	4E	DIGI-SEL (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	4F	Twin peak filter (0=OFF; 1=ON)
	50	Dial lock (0=OFF; 1=ON)
19	00	Read the transceiver ID
1A	00	Send/read memory contents (see p. 14-9 for details)
	01	Send/read band stacking register contents (see p. 14-9 for details)
	02	Send/read memory keyer contents (see p. 14-9 for details)
	03	Send/read the selected filter width (SSB, CW, PSK: 0=50 Hz to 40=3600 Hz; RTTY: 0=50 Hz to 31=2700 Hz; AM: 0=200 Hz to 49=10 kHz)
	04	Send/read the selected AGC time constant (0=OFF, 1=0.1/0.3 sec. to 13=6.0/8.0 sec.)
	050001	Send/read SSB TX Tone (Bass) level (0 =–5 to 10=+5)
	050002	Send/read SSB TX Tone (Treble) level (0=–5 to 10=+5)
	050003	Send/read SSB RX Tone (Bass) level (0 =–5 to 10=+5)
	050004	Send/read SSB RX Tone (Treble) level (0=–5 to 10=+5)
	050005	Send/read AM TX Tone (Bass) level (0 =–5 to 10=+5)
	050006	Send/read AM TX Tone (Treble) level (0=–5 to 10=+5)
	050007	Send/read AM RX Tone (Bass) level (0 =–5 to 10=+5)
	050008	Send/read AM RX Tone (Treble) level (0=–5 to 10=+5)
	050009	Send/read FM TX Tone (Bass) level (0 =–5 to 10=+5)
	050010	Send/read FM TX Tone (Treble) level (0=–5 to 10=+5)

Command	Sub command	Description
1A	050011	Send/read FM RX Tone (Bass) level (0 =–5 to 10=+5)
	050012	Send/read FM RX Tone (Treble) level (0=–5 to 10=+5)
	050013	Send/read SSB TX bandwidth for wide (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050014	Send/read SSB TX bandwidth for mid. (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050015	Send/read SSB TX bandwidth for narrow (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050016	Send/read speech level (0=0% to 255=100%)
	050017	Send/read CW side tone gain (0=min. to 255=max.)
	050018	Send/read CW side tone gain limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050019	Send/read beep gain (0=min. to 255=max.)
	050020	Send/read beep gain limit (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050021	Send/read headphones output ratio (0=0.60 to 255=1.40)
	050022	Send/read headphone output selection (0=separated, 1=mixed)
	050023	Send/read AF/SQL signal output to ACC-A (0=Main; 1=Sub)
	050024	Send/read AF/SQL signal output to ACC-B (0=Main; 1=Sub)
	050025	Send/read AF output level to ACC-A (0=0% to 255=100%)
	050026	Send/read AF output level to ACC-B (0=0% to 255=100%)
	050027	Send/read S/P DIF output level (0=0% to 255=100%)
	050028	Send/read MOD output level to ACC-A (0=0% to 255=100%)
	050029	Send/read MOD output level to ACC-B (0=0% to 255=100%)
	050030	Send/read S/P DIF MOD output level (0=0% to 255=100%)
	050031	Send/read MOD input connector during DATA OFF (0=MIC; 1=ACC-A; 2=ACC-B; 3=MIC/ACC-A; 4=MIC/ACC-B; 5=ACC-A/ACC-B; 6=MIC/ACC-A/ACC-B; 7=S/P DIF)
	050032	Send/read MOD input connector during DATA1 (0=MIC; 1=ACC-A; 2=ACC-B; 3=MIC/ACC-A; 4=MIC/ACC-B; 5=ACC-A/ACC-B; 6=MIC/ACC-A/ACC-B; 7=S/P DIF)
	050033	Send/read MOD input connector during DATA2 (0=MIC; 1=ACC-A; 2=ACC-B; 3=MIC/ACC-A; 4=MIC/ACC-B; 5=ACC-A/ACC-B; 6=MIC/ACC-A/ACC-B; 7=S/P DIF)
	050034	Send/read MOD input connector during DATA3 (0=MIC; 1=ACC-A; 2=ACC-B; 3=MIC/ACC-A; 4=MIC/ACC-B; 5=ACC-A/ACC-B; 6=MIC/ACC-A/ACC-B; 7=S/P DIF)

◇ Command table (continued)

Command	Sub command	Description
1A	050035	Send/read the band selection for operating frequency band signal output to ACC-A. (0=MAIN, 1=SUB, 2=TX)
	050036	Send/read the band selection for operating frequency band signal output to ACC-A. (0=MAIN, 1=SUB, 2=TX)
	050037	Send/read relay type selection (0=Lead, 1=MOS-FET)
	050038	Send/read main band's external meter output selection (0=Auto, 1=S (main), 2=Po, 3=SWR, 4=ALC, 5=COMP, 6=V$_D$, 7=I$_D$)
	050039	Send/read sub band's external meter output selection (0=Auto, 1=S (sub), 2=Po, 3=SWR, 4=ALC, 5=COMP, 6=V$_D$, 7=I$_D$)
	050040	Send/read main band's external meter output level (0=0% to 255=100%)
	050041	Send/read sub band's external meter output level (0=0% to 255=100%)
	050042	Send/read reference signal in/out setting (0=OFF, 1=IN, 2=OUT)
	050043	Send/read reference signal frequency setting (0=0% to 255=100%)
	050044	Send/read LCD unit backlight brightness (0=0% to 255=100%)
	050045	Send/read switch indicator brightness (0=0% to 255=100%)
	050046	Send/read screen image type (0=A, 1=B, 2=C)
	050047	Send/read frequency readout font (0=Italic (1), 1=Italic (2), 2=Italic (3), 3=Italic (4), 4=Round (1), 5=Round (2), 6=Round (3), 7=Shadow (1), 8=Shadow (2), 9=Shadow (3), 10=Qubic (1), 11=Qubic (2), 12=Qubic (3), 13=Qubic (4), 14=IC-780 (1), 15=IC-780 (2), 16=IC-780 (3), 17=IC-780 (4))
	050048	Send/read font for other than frequency readout (0=Normal, 1=Slim)
	050049	Send/read meter type (0=Standard, 1=Edgewise, 2=Bar)
	050050	Send/read meter type during wide screen or mini scope indication (0=Edgewise, 1=Bar)
	050051	Send/read peak hold set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050052	Send/read memory name indication setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050053	Send/read audio peak filter width pop-up indication setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050054	Send/read manual notch width pop-up indication setting (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050055	Send/read output signal setting for external display (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050056	Send/read synchronous pulse level setting (0=L, 1=H)

Command	Sub command	Description
1A	050057	Send/read opening message indication (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050058	Send/read opening message contents (see p. 14-9 for details)
	050059	Send/read date (20000101=1st Jan. 2001 to 20991231=31st Dec. 2099)
	050060	Send/read time (0000=00:00 to 2359=23:59)
	050061	Send/read clock 2 function (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050062	Send/read offset time for clock 2 (240001=−24:00 to 240000=+24:00)
	050063	Send/read clock 2 name (up to 3-character; see p. 14-9)
	050064	Send/read calibration marker (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050065	Send/read confirmation beep (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050066	Send/read band edge beep (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050067	Send/read main band's beep audio frequency (50=500 Hz to 200=2000 Hz)
	050068	Send/read sub band's beep audio frequency (50=500 Hz to 200=2000 Hz)
	050069	Send/read quick dualwatch function (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050070	Send/read quick split set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050071	Send/read FM split offset −9.999 to +9.999 MHz for HF (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050072	Send/read FM split offset −9.999 to +9.999 MHz for 50 MHz (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050073	Send/read split lock set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050074	Send/read tuner auto start set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050075	Send/read PTT tune set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050076	Send/read transverter set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050077	Send/read transverter offset (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050078	Send/read RTTY mark frequency (0=1275 Hz, 1=1615 Hz, 2=2125 Hz)
	050079	Send/read RTTY shift width (0=170 Hz, 1=200 Hz, 2=425 Hz)
	050080	Send/read RTTY keying polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)
	050081	Send/read PSK tone frequency (0=1000 Hz, 1=1500 Hz, 2=2000 Hz)
	050082	Send/read speech language (0=English, 1=Japanese)
	050083	Send/read speech speed (0=Slow, 1=Fast)
	050084	Send/read S-level speech (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050085	Send/read speech with a mode switch operation (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050086	Send/read memo pad numbers (0=5 ch, 1=10 ch)

◇ Command table (continued)

Command	Sub command	Description	Command	Sub command	Description
1A	050087	Send/read main dial function (0=MAIN, 1=MAIN+SUB)	1A	050115	Send/read scope sweep speed for ±2.5 kHz span (0=Slow, 1=Mid., 2=Fast)
	050088	Send/read main dial auto TS (0=OFF, 1=Low, 2=High)		050116	Send/read scope sweep speed for ±5 kHz span (0=Slow, 1=Mid., 2=Fast)
	050089	Send/read sub dial auto TS (0=OFF, 1=Low, 2=High)		050117	Send/read scope sweep speed for ±10 kHz span (0=Slow, 1=Mid., 2=Fast)
	050090	Send/read mic. up/down speed (0=Low, 1=High)		050118	Send/read scope sweep speed for ±25 kHz span (0=Slow, 1=Mid., 2=Fast)
	050091	Send/read quick RIT/⊿TX clear function (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050119	Send/read scope sweep speed for ±50 kHz span (0=Slow, 1=Mid., 2=Fast)
	050092	Send/read SSB notch operation (0=Auto, 1=Manual, 2=Auto/Manual)		050120	Send/read scope sweep speed for ±100 kHz span (0=Slow, 1=Mid., 2=Fast)
	050093	Send/read AM notch operation (0=Auto, 1=Manual, 2=Auto/Manual)		050121	Send/read scope sweep speed for ±250 kHz span (0=Slow, 1=Mid., 2=Fast)
	050094	Send/read DIGI-SEL control function (0=DIGI-SEL, 1=APF)		050122	Send/read scope edge frequencies for 0.03 to 1.60 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050095	Send/read band indication for filter set screen (0=Fix, 1=Auto)		050123	Send/read scope edge frequencies for 1.60 to 2.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050096	Send/read SSB/CW synchronous tuning function (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050124	Send/read scope edge frequencies for 2.00 to 6.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050097	Send/read CW normal side set (0=LSB, 1=USB)		050125	Send/read scope edge frequencies for 6.00 to 8.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050098	Send/read PSK normal side set (0=LSB, 1=USB)		050126	Send/read scope edge frequencies for 8.00 to 11.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050099	Send/read band setting for audio output from mic. connector (0=MAIN+SUB, 1=SUB)		050127	Send/read scope edge frequencies for 11.00 to 15.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050100	Send/read external keypad set for voice memory (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050128	Send/read scope edge frequencies for 15.00 to 20.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050101	Send/read external keypad set for keyer memory (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050129	Send/read scope edge frequencies for 20.00 to 22.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050102	Send/read CI-V transceive set (0=OFF, 1=ON)		050130	Send/read scope edge frequencies for 22.00 to 26.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050103	Send/read RS-232C function (0=CI-V, 1=Decode)		050131	Send/read scope edge frequencies for 26.00 to 30.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050104	Send/read RS-232C decode speed (0=300, 1=1200, 2=4800, 3=9600, 4=19200)		050132	Send/read scope edge frequencies for 30.00 to 45.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050105	Send/read keyboard type (0=English, 1=Japanese)		050133	Send/read scope edge frequencies for 45.00 to 60.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050106	Send/read keyboard repeat delay (10=100 msec. to 100=1000 msec.)		050134	Send/read auto voice monitor set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050107	Send/read keyboard repeat speed (0=2.0 cps to 31=30.0 cps)		050135	Send/read voice memory short play time (3=3 sec. to 10=10 sec.)
	050108	Send/read IP address set (0000000000000000=0.0.0.0 to 0255025502550255=255.255.255.255)		050136	Send/read voice memory normal record time (5= 5 sec. to 15=15 sec.)
	050109	Send/read subnet mask (0=0.0.0.0 to 30=255.255.255.252)			
	050110	Send/read scope indication during TX (0=OFF, 1=ON)			
	050111	Send/read scope max. hold (0=OFF, 1=ON)			
	050112	Send/read scope center frequency set (0=Filter center, 1=Carrier point center, 2=Carrier point center (Abs. Freq.))			
	050113	Send/read waveform color for receiving signal (see p. 14-10 for details)			
	050114	Send/read waveform color for max. hold (see p. 14-10 for details)			

◇ Command table (continued)

Command	Sub command	Description
1A	050137	Send/read contest number style (0=Normal, 1=190→ANO, 2=190→ANT, 3=90→NO, 4=90→NT)
	050138	Send/read count up trigger channel (1=M1, 2=M2, 3=M3, 4=M4)
	050139	Send/read present number (1–9999)
	050140	Send/read CW keyer repeat time (1=1 sec. to 60=60 sec.)
	050141	Send/read CW keyer dot/dash ratio (28=1:1:2.8 to 45=1:1:4.5)
	050142	Send/read rise time (0=2 msec., 1=4 msec., 2=6 msec., 3=8 msec.)
	050143	Send/read paddle polarity (0=Normal, 1=Reverse)
	050144	Send/read keyer type (0=Straight, 1=Bug-key, 2=ELEC-Key)
	050145	Send/read mic. up/down keyer set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050146	Send/read RTTY decode USOS (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050147	Send/read RTTY decode new line code (0=CR,LF,CR+LF, 1=CR+LF)
	050148	Send/read RTTY diddle (0=OFF, 1=Blank, 2=Letter)
	050149	Send/read RTTY TX USOS (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050150	Send/read RTTY auto CR+LF by TX (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050151	Send/read RTTY time stamp set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050152	Send/read clock selection for time stamp (0=Local time, 1=Clock 2)
	050153	Send/read frequency stamp (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050154	Send/read received text font color (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050155	Send/read transmitted text font color (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050156	Send/read time stamp text font color (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050157	Send/read text font color in TX buffer (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050158	Send/read PSK time stamp set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050159	Send/read clock selection for time stamp (0=Local time, 1=Clock 2)
	050160	Send/read frequency stamp (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050161	Send/read received text font color (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050162	Send/read transmitted text font color (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050163	Send/read time stamp text font color (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050164	Send/read text font color in TX buffer (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050165	Send/read scan speed (0=Low, 1=High)
	050166	Send/read scan resume (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050167	Send/read antenna selection for 0.03 to 1.60 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)

Command	Sub command	Description
1A	050168	Send/read antenna selection for 1.60 to 2.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050169	Send/read antenna selection for 2.00 to 6.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050170	Send/read antenna selection for 6.00 to 8.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050171	Send/read antenna selection for 8.00 to 11.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050172	Send/read antenna selection for 11.00 to 15.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050173	Send/read antenna selection for 15.00 to 20.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050174	Send/read antenna selection for 20.00 to 22.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050175	Send/read antenna selection for 22.00 to 26.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050176	Send/read antenna selection for 26.00 to 30.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050177	Send/read antenna selection for 30.00 to 45.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050178	Send/read antenna selection for 45.00 to 60.00 MHz band (see p. 14-10 for details)
	050179	Send/read antenna temporary memory set (0=OFF, 1=ON)
	050180	Send/read antenna selection (0=OFF, 1=Manual, 2=Auto)
	050181	Send/read usage for ANT2 (0=OFF, 1=TX/RX)
	050182	Send/read usage for ANT3 (0=OFF, 1=TX/RX)
	050183	Send/read usage for ANT4 (0=OFF, 1=TX/RX, 2= RX)
	050184	Send/read VOX delay (0=0.0 sec. to 20=2.0 sec.)
	050185	Send/read VOX voice delay (0=OFF, 1=Short, 2=Long)
	050186	Send/read NB depth (0=1 to 9=10)
	050187	Send/read NB width (0=0 to 255=255)
	06	Send/read DATA mode with filter set (see p. 14-10 for detail)
	07	Send/read SSB transmit bandwidth (0=WIDE, 1=MID, 2=NAR)
	08	Send/read DSP filter shape (0= sharp, 1= soft)
	09	Send/read roofing filter set (0=6 kHz, 1=15 kHz)
	0A	Send/read manual notch width (0=Wide, 1=Mid., 2=Nar.)
	10	Send/read lock function set (0=OFF, 1=ON)

◇ Command table (continued)

Command	Sub command	Description
1B	00	Set/read repeater tone frequency (see p. 14-10 for details)
	01	Set/read TSQL tone frequency (see p. 14-10 for details)
1C	00	Set/read the transceiver's condition (0=Rx; 1=Tx)
	01	Set/read antenna tuner condition (0=OFF, 1=ON, 2=Start tuning or while tuning)

◇ To send/read memory contents

When sending or reading memory contents, additional code as follows must be added to appoint the memory channel.
➡ Additional code: 0000–0101 (0100=P1, 0101=P2)

◇ Band stacking register

To send or read the desired band stacking register's contents, combined code of the frequency band and register codes as follows are used.
For example, when sending/reading the oldest contents in the 21 MHz band, the code "0703" is used.

• Frequency band code

Code	Frequency band	Frequency range (unit: MHz)
01	1.8	1.800000– 1.999999
02	3.5	3.400000– 4.099999
03	7	6.900000– 7.499999
04	10	9.900000–10.499999
05	14	13.900000–14.499999
06	18	17.900000–18.499999
07	21	20.900000–21.499999
08	24	24.400000–25.099999
09	28	28.000000–29.999999
10	50	50.000000–54.000000
12	GENE	Other than above

• Register code

Code	Registered number
01	1 (latest)
02	2
03	3 (oldest)

◇ Codes for memory keyer contents

To send or read the desired memory keyer contents, the channel and character codes as follows are used.

• Channel code

Code	Channel number
01	M1
02	M2
03	M3
04	M4

• Character's code

Character	ASCII code	Description
0–9	30–39	Numerals
A–Z	41–5A	Alphabetical characters
space	20	Word space
/	2F	Symbol
?	3F	Symbol
,	2C	Symbol
.	2E	Symbol
^	5E	e.g., to send $\overline{BT}$, enter ^4254
✱	2A	Inserts contest number (can be used for 1 channel only)

◇ Codes for memory name, opening message and clock 2 name contents

To send or read the desired memory name settings, the character codes, instructed codes for memory keyer contents as above, and follows are additionally used.

• Character's code— Alphabetical characters

Character	ASCII code	Character	ASCII code
a–z	61–7A	—	—

• Character's code— Symbols

Character	ASCII code	Character	ASCII code
!	21	#	23
$	24	%	25
&	26	¥	5C
?	3F	"	22
'	27	`	60
+	2B	–	2D
:	3A	;	3B
=	3D	<	3C
>	3E	(	28
)	29	[	5B
]	5D	{	7B
}	7D			7C
_	5F	~	7E
@			

◇ Offset frequency setting

The following data sequence is used when sending or reading the offset frequency setting.

①		②				③		④*
X	0	X	X	0	X	XX

- 1 kHz digit: 0–9
- 100 Hz digit: 0 (fixed)
- 100 kHz digit: 0–9
- 10 kHz digit: 0–9
- 10 MHz digit: 0–9†
- 1 MHz digit: 0–4
- Direction: 00=+ direction, 01=– direction
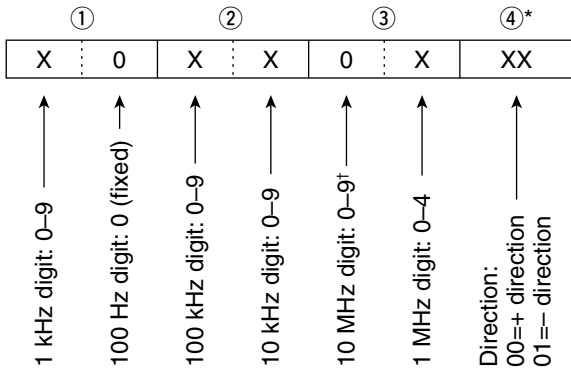
*No need to enter for transverter offset frequency setting.
†Transverter offset only; Fix to '0' for split offset setting.

◇ Repeater tone/tone squelch frequency setting

The following data sequence is used when sending or reading the tone frequency setting.

①*		②		③	
0	0	X	X	X	X

- Fixed digit: 0*
- Fixed digit: 0*
- 100Hz digit: 0–2
- 10 Hz digit: 0–9
- 1 Hz digit: 0–9
- 0.1 Hz digit: 0–9
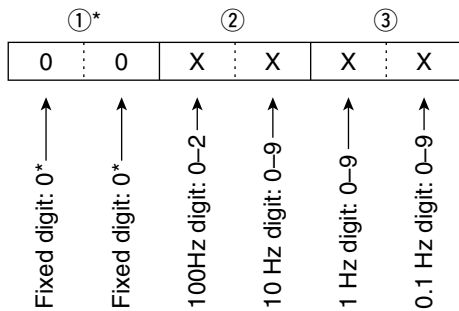
*Not necessary when setting a frequency.

◇ SSB transmission passband width setting

The following data sequence is used when sending or reading the SSB transmission passband width setting.

X	X

- Higher edge: 0=2500 Hz, 1=2700 Hz, 3=2900 Hz
- Lower edge: 0=100 Hz, 1=300 Hz, 3=500 Hz

◇ Color setting

The following data sequence is used when sending or reading the color setting.

①		②		③		④		⑤		⑥	
0	X	X	X	0	X	X	X	0	X	X	X

- R (Red): 1000, 100, 10, 1
- G (Green): 1000, 100, 10, 1
- B (Blue): 1000, 100, 10, 1

Using 0000–0255 for each color element.

◇ Bandscope edge frequency setting

The following data sequence is used when sending or reading the bandscope edge frequency setting.
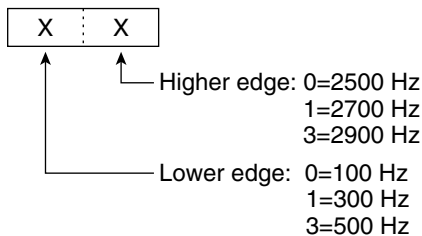
①		②		③		④		⑤		⑥	
X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

Lower edge:
- 1 kHz: 0–9
- 100 Hz: 0 (fixed)
- 100 kHz: 0–9
- 10 kHz: 0–9
- 10 MHz: 0–6
- 1 MHz: 0–9

Higher edge:
- 1 MHz: 0–9
- 10 MHz: 0–6
- 10 kHz: 0–9
- 100 kHz: 0–9
- 100 Hz: 0 (fixed)
- 1 kHz: 0–9

◇ Data mode with filter width setting

The following data sequence is used when sending or reading the data mode with filter width setting.

①		②	
X	X	X	X

②:
- 00=Data mode OFF
- 01=FIL1
- 02=FIL2
- 03=FIL3

①:
- 00=Data mode OFF
- 01=Data mode 1 (D1)
- 02=Data mode 2 (D2)
- 03=Data mode 3 (D3)

◇ Antenna memory setting

The following codes are used when sending or reading the antenna memory setting.
0=ANT1, 1=ANT2, 2=ANT3, 3=ANT4,
4*=TX: ANT1, RX: ANT4, 5*=TX: ANT2, RX: ANT4,
6*=TX: ANT3, RX: ANT4

*RX should be selected for ANT4

SPECIFICATIONS AND OPTIONS   Section 15

■ Specifications

◇ General

- **Frequency coverage** (unit: MHz)   :
  - Receiver   0.030000–60.000000*¹
  - Transmitter   1.800000–1.999999*², 3.500000–3.999999*²,
    5.330500*³, 5.346500*³, 5.366500*³, 5.371500*³,
    5.403500*³, 7.000000–7.300000*²,
    10.100000–10.150000*², 14.000000–14.350000*²,
    18.068000–18.168000*², 21.000000–21.450000*²,
    24.890000–24.990000*², 28.000000–29.700000*²,
    50.000000–54.000000*²
    *¹Some frequency ranges are not guaranteed.
    *²Depending on versions.   *³USA version only.
- **Operating mode**   : USB, LSB, CW, RTTY, PSK31, AM, FM
- **Number of memory channels**   : 101 (99 regular, 2 scan edges)
- **Antenna connector**   : SO-239×4 (antenna impedance: 50 Ω)
- **Operating temperature range**   : 0˚C to +50˚C; +32˚F to +122˚F
- **Frequency stability**   : Less than ±0.05 ppm (0–50˚C; 32–122˚F)
- **Frequency resolution**   : 1 Hz
- **Power supply requirement**   : 85–265 V AC (universal input)
- **Power consumption**   :
  - Power OFF   Stand-by   10 VA typical
  - Receive   Stand-by   200 VA typical
                 Max. audio   210 VA typical
  - Transmit   at 200 W   800 VA
- **Dimensions** (projections not included) : 424×149×435 mm; 16¹¹/₁₆×5⁷/₈×17³/₁₆ in
- **Weight**   : Approx. 25 kg; 55 lb
- **ACC 1 connectors**   : 8-pin DIN connector×2
- **ACC 2 connectors**   : 7-pin DIN connector×2
- **Display***   : 7-inch (diagonal) TFT color LCD (800×480)
- **EXT-DISPLAY connector**   : D-sub 15S
- **CI-V connector**   : 2-conductor 3.5 (d) mm (⅛″)
- **RS-232C connector**   : D-sub 9-pin
- **KEYBOARD connector**   : USB

◇ Transmitter

- **Transmit output power**   :
  - SSB, CW, RTTY, PSK31, FM   5–200 W
  - AM   5–50 W
  - 137 kHz band   More than –20 dBm (Except for USA and Korean versions)
- **Modulation system**   :
  - SSB   P.S.N. modulation
  - AM   Low power modulation
  - FM   Phase modulation
- **Spurious emission**   : More than 60 dB (HF bands)
                                          More than 70 dB (50 MHz band)
- **Carrier suppression**   : More than 63 dB (HF bands)
                                          More than 73 dB (50 MHz band)
- **Unwanted side-band suppression**   : More than 80 dB
- **ⲀTX variable range**   : ±9.999 kHz
- **Microphone connector**   : 8-pin connector (600 Ω)
- **ELEC-KEY connector**   : 3-conductor 6.35 (d) mm (¼″)
- **KEY connector**   : 3-conductor 6.35 (d) mm (¼″)
- **RELAY connector**   : Phono (RCA)
- **ALC connector**   : Phono (RCA)

◇ **Receiver**

- **Receive system** : Double conversion superheterodyne system
- **Intermediate frequencies** :
  - 1st   64.455 MHz (MAIN band)
  -         64.555 MHz (SUB band)
  - 2nd   36 kHz
- **Sensitivity** :
  - SSB, CW, RTTY (BW=2.4 kHz, 10 dB S/N)
    - 0.100–1.799 MHz   0.5 µV (pre-amp 1 ON)
    - 1.800–29.990 MHz   0.16 µV (pre-amp 1 ON)
    - 50.000–54.000 MHz   0.13 µV (pre-amp 2 ON)
  - AM (BW=6 kHz, 10 dB S/N)
    - 0.100–1.799 MHz   6.3 µV (pre-amp 1 ON)
    - 1.800–29.990 MHz   2 µV (pre-amp 1 ON)
    - 50.000–54.000 MHz   1 µV (pre-amp 2 ON)
  - FM (BW=15 kHz, 12 dB SINAD)
    - 28.000–29.990 MHz   0.5 µV (pre-amp 1 ON)
    - 50.000–54.000 MHz   0.32 µV (pre-amp 2 ON)
- **Selectivity** :
  - SSB, RTTY (BW=2.4 kHz)   More than 2.4 kHz/–3 dB
    - Less than 3.6 kHz/–60 dB
  - CW (BW=500 Hz)   More than 500 Hz/–3 dB
    - Less than 700 Hz/–60 dB
  - AM (BW=6 kHz)   More than 6.0 kHz/–3 dB
    - Less than 15.0 kHz/–60 dB
  - FM (BW=15 kHz)   More than 12.0 kHz/–3 dB
    - Less than 20.0 kHz/–60 dB
- **Spurious and image rejection ratio** : More than 70 dB (except IF through on 50 MHz band)
- **Squelch sensitivity** :
  - SSB, CW, RTTY, PSK31   Less than 5.6 µV
  - FM   Less than 1 µV
- **RIT variable range** : ±9.999 kHz
- **Audio output power** : More than 2.6 W at 10% distortion with an 8 Ω load
- **PHONES connector** : 3-conductor 6.35 (d) mm (¼″)
- **EXT-SP connectors** : 2-conductor 3.5 (d) mm (⅛″)/8 Ω×2 (for main and sub)

◇ **Antenna tuner**

- **Matching impedance range** : 16.7 to 150 Ω unbalanced
  - (HF bands; VSWR better than 3:1)
  - 20 to 125 Ω unbalanced
  - (50 MHz band; VSWR better than 2.5:1)
- **Minimum operating input** : 8 W (HF bands)
  - 15 W (50 MHz band)
- **Tuning accuracy** : VSWR 1.5:1 or less
- **Insertion loss** (after tuning) : Less than 1.0 dB

*The LCD display may have cosmetic imperfections that appear as small or dark spots. This is not a malfunction or defect, but a normal characteristic of LCD displays.

Spurious may be received near the following frequencies. These are made in the internal circuit and does not indicate a transceiver malfunction.

• 0.150 MHz   • 10.490 MHz

All stated specifications are typical and subject to change without notice or obligation.

■ **Options**

• **IC-PW1** HF/50 MHz ALL BAND 1 kW LINEAR AMPLIFIER

Full-duty 1 kW linear amplifier including an automatic antenna tuner. Has automatic tuning and band selection capability. Full break-in (QSK) operation is possible. The amplifier/power supply unit and the remote control unit are separated.

*The IC-PW1 does not comply with European Harmonised Standard regulations. Please do not use this equipment within European countries.

• **SM-20** DESKTOP MICROPHONE

Unidirectional, electret microphone for base station operation. Includes [UP]/[DOWN] switches and a low cut function.

• **CT-17** CI-V LEVEL CONVERTER

For remote transceiver control using a PC. You can change frequencies, operating mode, memory channels, etc. (software is not included)

• **SP-20** EXTERNAL SPEAKER

4 audio filters; headphone jack; can connect to 2 transceivers.
• Input impedance   : 8 Ω
• Max. input power   : 5 W

• **HM-36** HAND MICROPHONE

Hand microphone equipped with [UP]/[DOWN] switches.

INSTALLATION NOTES

For amateur base station installations it is recommended that the forwards clearance in front of the antenna array is calculated relative to the EIRP (Effective Isotropic Radiated Power). The clearance height below the antenna array can be determined in most cases from the RF power at the antenna input terminals.

As different exposure limits have been recommended for different frequencies, a relative table shows a guideline for installation considerations.

Below 30 MHz, the recommended limits are specified in terms of V/m or A/m fields as they are likely to fall within the near-field region. Similarly, the antennae may be physically short in terms of electrical length and that the installation will require some antenna matching device which can create local, high intensity magnetic fields. Analysis of such MF installations is best considered in association with published guidance notes such as the FCC OET Bulletin 65 Edition 97-01 and its annexes relative to amateur transmitter installations. The EC recommended limits are almost identical to the FCC specified 'uncontrolled' limits and tables exist that show pre-calculated safe distances for different antenna types for different frequency bands. Further information can be found at http://www.arrl.org/.

• Typical amateur radio installation

Exposure distance assumes that the predominant radiation pattern is forwards and that radiation vertically downwards is at unity gain (sidelobe suppression is equal to main lobe gain). This is true of almost every gain antenna today. Exposed persons are assumed to be beneath the antenna array and have a typical height to 1.8 m.

The figures assume the worst case emission of constant carrier.

For the bands 10 MHz and higher the following power density limits have been recommended:

  10–144 MHz   2 W/sq m

EIRP clearance heights by frequency band

1 Watts	2.1 m
10 Watts	2.8 m
25 Watts	3.4 m
100 Watts	5 m
1000 Watts	12 m

Forward clearance, EIRP by frequency band

100 Watts	2 m
1000 Watts	6.5 m
10,000 Watts	20 m
100,000 Watts	65 m

In all cases any possible risk depends on the transmitter being activated for long periods. (actual recommendation limits are specified as an average during 6 minutes) Normally the transmitter is not active for long periods of time. Some radio licenses will require that a timer circuit automatically cuts the transmitter after 1–2 minutes etc.

Similarly some types of transmitter, SSB, CW, AM etc. have a lower 'average' output power and the assessed risk is even lower.
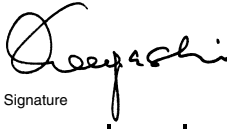
Versions of the IC-7800 which display the "CE" symbol on the serial number seal, comply with the essential requirements of the European Radio and Telecommunication Terminal Directive 1999/5/EC.

This warning symbol indicates that this equipment operates in non-harmonised frequency bands and/or may be subject to licensing conditions in the country of use. Be sure to check that you have the correct version of this radio or the correct programming of this radio, to comply with national licensing requirement.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

We Icom Inc. Japan
1-1-32, Kamiminami, Hirano-ku
Osaka 547-0003, Japan

Declare on our sole responsibility that this equipment complies with the essential requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive, 1999/5/EC, and that any applicable Essential Test Suite measurements have been performed.

Kind of equipment: HF/50 MHz ALL MODE TRANSCEIVER

Type-designation: IC-7800

Version (where applicable):
This compliance is based on conformity according to Annex III of the directive 1999/5/EC using the following harmonised standards:
i) Article 3.1a   EN 60950 + A11
ii) Article 3.1b   EN 301489-1 and EN 301489-15
iii) Article 3.2   EN 301 783-2
iv)
v)

CE ①

Düsseldorf 27th Feb. 2004
Place and date of issue

Icom (Europe) GmbH
Himmelgeister straße 100
D-40225 Düsseldorf
Authorized representative name

T. Maebayashi
General Manager

Signature

Icom Inc.

•Version and frequency coverage

Europe (#03), Denmark (#05)

Receive	Transmit
0.1000– 29.9999 MHz	0.1357– 0.1378 MHz
50.0000– 54.0000 MHz	1.8000– 1.9999 MHz
	3.5000– 3.8000 MHz
	7.0000– 7.1000 MHz
	10.1000– 10.1500 MHz
	14.0000– 14.3500 MHz
	18.0680– 18.1680 MHz
	21.0000– 21.4500 MHz
	24.8900– 24.9900 MHz
	28.0000– 29.7000 MHz
	50.0000– 52.0000 MHz

Spain (#08)

Receive	Transmit
0.1000– 29.9999 MHz	0.1357– 0.1378 MHz
50.0000– 54.0000 MHz	1.8300– 1.8500 MHz
	3.5000– 3.8000 MHz
	7.0000– 7.1000 MHz
	10.1000– 10.1500 MHz
	14.0000– 14.3500 MHz
	18.0680– 18.1680 MHz
	21.0000– 21.4500 MHz
	24.8900– 24.9900 MHz
	28.0000– 29.7000 MHz
	50.0000– 50.2000 MHz

France (#04)

Receive	Transmit
0.1000– 29.9999 MHz	0.1357– 0.1378 MHz
50.0000– 54.0000 MHz	1.8100– 1.8500 MHz
	3.5000– 3.8000 MHz
	7.0000– 7.1000 MHz
	10.1000– 10.1500 MHz
	14.0000– 14.3500 MHz
	18.0680– 18.1680 MHz
	21.0000– 21.4500 MHz
	24.8900– 24.9900 MHz
	28.0000– 29.7000 MHz
	50.2000– 51.2000 MHz

United Kingdom (#10)

Receive	Transmit
0.1000– 29.9999 MHz	0.1357– 0.1378 MHz
50.0000– 54.0000 MHz	1.8100– 1.8500 MHz
	3.5000– 3.8000 MHz
	7.0000– 7.1000 MHz
	10.1000– 10.1500 MHz
	14.0000– 14.3500 MHz
	18.0680– 18.1680 MHz
	21.0000– 21.4500 MHz
	24.8900– 24.9900 MHz
	28.0000– 29.7000 MHz
	50.0000– 52.0000 MHz

Italy (#06)

Receive	Transmit
0.1357– 0.1378 MHz	0.1357– 0.1378 MHz
1.8300– 1.8500 MHz	1.8300– 1.8500 MHz
3.5000– 3.8000 MHz	3.5000– 3.8000 MHz
7.0000– 7.1000 MHz	7.0000– 7.1000 MHz
10.1000– 10.1500 MHz	10.1000– 10.1500 MHz
14.0000– 14.3500 MHz	14.0000– 14.3500 MHz
18.0680– 18.1680 MHz	18.0680– 18.1680 MHz
21.0000– 21.4500 MHz	21.0000– 21.4500 MHz
24.8900– 24.9900 MHz	24.8900– 24.9900 MHz
28.0000– 29.7000 MHz	28.0000– 29.7000 MHz
50.0000– 51.0000 MHz	50.0000– 51.0000 MHz

Please record the serial number of your IC-7800 transceiver below for future servicing reference:

Serial Number   : _____

Date of purchase   : _____

Place where purchased : _____

Count on us!

IC-7800
#03 (Europe)

<Intended Country of Use>
■ GER ☐ FRA ☐ ESP ■ SWE
■ AUT ■ NED ☐ POR ■ DEN
☐ GBR ■ BEL ☐ ITA ■ FIN
■ IRL ■ LUX ■ GRE ☐ SUI
☐ NOR

IC-7800
#04 (France)

<Intended Country of Use>
☐ GER ■ FRA ☐ ESP ☐ SWE
☐ AUT ☐ NED ☐ POR ☐ DEN
☐ GBR ☐ BEL ☐ ITA ☐ FIN
☐ IRL ☐ LUX ☐ GRE ☐ SUI
☐ NOR

IC-7800
#06 (Italy)

<Intended Country of Use>
☐ GER ☐ FRA ☐ ESP ☐ SWE
☐ AUT ☐ NED ☐ POR ☐ DEN
☐ GBR ☐ BEL ■ ITA ☐ FIN
☐ IRL ☐ LUX ☐ GRE ☐ SUI
☐ NOR

IC-7800
#08 (Spain)

<Intended Country of Use>
☐ GER ☐ FRA ■ ESP ☐ SWE
☐ AUT ☐ NED ■ POR ☐ DEN
☐ GBR ☐ BEL ☐ ITA ☐ FIN
☐ IRL ☐ LUX ☐ GRE ☐ SUI
☐ NOR

IC-7800
#10 (United
　　　Kingdom)

<Intended Country of Use>
☐ GER ☐ FRA ☐ ESP ☐ SWE
☐ AUT ☐ NED ☐ POR ☐ DEN
■ GBR ☐ BEL ☐ ITA ☐ FIN
☐ IRL ☐ LUX ☐ GRE ☐ SUI
☐ NOR

Icom Inc.
1-1-32 Kamiminami, Hirano-ku, Osaka 547-0003, Japan